

Executive Summary

Assault Amphibian Unit Training and Readiness Manual

The Assault Amphibian (AA) Unit Training and Readiness (T&R) Manual is a unit-based manual composed of individual and collective training standards for Marines in AA battalions with the primary MOS of 1803 or 1833. This manual is also applicable to Marines serving in other assault amphibian units that are operating independently or not apart of an AA battalion. This manual links every Collective and subsequently every Individual training event to one or more Mission Essential Tasks (MET). Chapter 1 describes the updates in the program order affecting all T&R manuals. Chapter 2 provides a matrix table of each MET and the corresponding key collective events, called Evaluation Coded (e-coded) events. Chapter 3 is the Collective Event chapter, which links each event to a MET. Chapter 4 is the Individual Event (or Individual Training Standards (ITS)) chapter providing the linkage from individual skills, to unit skills, to the METs they support. Where possible, resource implications are included, but only to the extent where mature calculating methodologies exist. If resource calculations were either speculative or subject to wide variance between units, this manual only reflects the presence of that resource for the given training event, but refrains from citing quantities.

This Assault Amphibian Unit T&R Manual is the result of numerous subject matter expert (SME) conferences conducted during June 2002, February 2004, and April 2004. Along with occupational field and Assault Amphibian School Battalion representatives, every continental based (CONUS) assault amphibian battalion participated in these conferences. During the conferences, SMEs refined the Service-Level Assault Amphibian Battalion Mission Essential Task List (METL), streamlining the collective and individual events to manageable and realistic training requirements.

This manual highlights resources required to support training (i.e. MCBul 8011). The next update to this manual will improve and articulate the method of resource calculations associated with training events. Units should accurately track resource requirements associated with individual and collective training contained in this manual and report them through their OccFld sponsor, PP&O (POE) at the semi-annual Assault Amphibian Operational Advisory Groups (OAG) for inclusion in POM & PR program and resource increases.

Major points regarding the Assault Amphibian Unit T&R Manual are:

- This manual is intended to serve the Assault Amphibian community and direct their training efforts in support of unit training and readiness.

- This manual reveals common skill sets across METs that will aid in the establishment of training plans that prioritize training time and optimize resources.

- This manual creates direct continuity between schoolhouses and operating forces. Future modifications to either school curriculum or changes in doctrine, implementation of new equipment, or addition/deletion of METs will have a known corresponding impact across the entire training continuum. Consequently, future changes to doctrine, T&R manuals or Course Content Review Boards (CCRBs) should be closely coordinated, if not conducted with joint representation.

- This manual is not a tactics, techniques, and procedures manual. This manual should be used in conjunction with technical manuals and warfighting publications.

- This manual is intended to serve as a source document to articulate event descriptions, conditions, standards, references and resources.

- This manual should not be considered an Assault Amphibian Unit "how to" manual for non-assault amphibian personnel.

During staffing and revision of the draft version of this manual, several changes to the Ground T&R Program occurred. This program will continue to evolve, especially after publication of the first wave of T&R manuals. A 12-18 month formal review of this T&R Manual by the Assault Amphibian Schools Battalion and the operating forces is recommended to provide TECOM with feedback on recommended changes and improvements. As the Ground T&R Program evolves, the AA Unit T&R Manual will be updated and revised to enhance and sustain training and combat readiness.

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps
To: Distribution List

Subj: ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN UNIT TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL (SHORT
TITLE: AA UNIT T&R MANUAL)

Ref: (a) MCO P3500.72, Marine Corps Ground Training and Readiness
Order
(b) MCO 1553.3A Unit Training Management
(c) MCRP 3-0A, Unit Training Management Guide
(d) MCRP 3-0B, How to Conduct Training
(e) MCO 3500.27A Operational Risk Management (ORM)
(f) MCO 3501.31 Assault Amphibian Unit Training and Readiness
Manual
(g) MCO 3501.29 MCCRES Volume X, Part C, Assault Amphibian
Vehicle Units
(h) MCO 1510.103 Order for OccFld 18 Tank and Assault
Amphibious Vehicle, Vol. 2, Assault Amphibian
(i) MCO 3400.3F Nuclear, Biological, Chemical Defense
(j) MCO 3500.70 NBC Training and Readiness Manual

Encl: (1) Locator Sheet

1. Purpose. To establish training standards, regulations and policies regarding the training of Marines and assigned Navy personnel to Assault Amphibian units in Assault Amphibian Battalion.
2. Cancellation. This manual replaces references (f), (g), and (h).
3. Background

a. Training and Readiness (T&R) Manuals were first developed for Marine aircrews in 1976. Aviation T&R evolved during the ensuing years, and was expanded to the Marine Air Command and Control System agencies in 1994. The stated purpose was to provide commanders with a Corps-wide standardized training approach to develop and measure unit combat capabilities. The first T&R Manual for ground-related occupational fields (Tanks) was completed in 1995, based essentially on the same premise as that of the aviation community. Additional T&R Manuals were developed through the end of the 1990's in an evolutionary manner, originating as an augment to Individual Training Standards (ITS) and the Mission Performance Standards (MPS) of the Marine Corps Combat Readiness Evaluation System (MCCRES). Today, the T&R Program is evolving to incorporate and replace these training standards to serve as a single reference for unit or occupational field, collective, and individual training. The overarching philosophy and policies specific to the Ground T&R Program are contained in reference (a).

b. As the Ground T&R Program evolves, T&R manuals will be used to justify and allocate resources. Each T&R event lists the support estimates required to accomplish the event, to include range and

ammunition requirements. Quantitative feedback from the operating forces utilizing T&R Manuals will be used as contributing justification for initiatives to expand the capabilities of current ranges, to build new ranges, and to allocate ammunition. A T&R management tool is also being developed. This tool will allow users to cross-reference and link to other T&R manuals and assist with automation of Unit Training Management (UTM). These and related efforts are aimed at ensuring the operating forces have the resources they require to plan and execute effective, efficient training.

c. To maintain an effective program, Training and Education Command (TECOM) will require feedback from the users. Over the next several years, T&R Manuals and the Ground T&R Program Order shall be reviewed annually and amended based on input from the Operating Forces. The results of feedback will be used for overall program updates and improvements to individual T&R Manual functionality.

4. Command Action

a. Commanders will review, update, and submit unit Mission Essential Task List (METL) in accordance with references (b) and (c).

b. Per reference (b), commanders shall conduct an internal assessment of the unit's ability to execute each MET and prepare a definitive plan of attack to achieve MET proficiency by developing long, mid, and short-range training plans to achieve proficiency in each MET.

c. The commander will develop the training plan based on the unit's approved METL. Each collective and individual training event lists the METs they support, allowing the commander to easily identify the individual and collective training events that support the unit's METL. Once training requirements are identified, the commander will set training priorities and issue training guidance.

d. Utilizing this T&R Manual and other pertinent references, commanders will conduct evaluations (informal and formal) of their unit's ability to accomplish their METs. These training evaluations will be conducted at appropriate points in the unit's training cycle to determine MET proficiency and adjust training priorities.

e. Formal school directors and commanders will establish or review programs of instruction to ensure compliance with the core individual training requirements as set forth in this Order.

5. Coordinating Instructions. All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: Commandant of the Marine Corps (C 469), 3300 Russell Road, Quantico, VA 22134.

6. Reserve Applicability. This Order is applicable to the Marine Corps Reserve.

7. Certification. Reviewed and approved this date.

T. S. JONES
By direction

Distribution: PCN

This page left intentionally blank.

LOCATOR SHEET

Subj: ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN UNIT TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Location:

(Indicate location(s) of copy(ies) of this Manual.)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated

Change Number	Date of Change	Date Entered	Signature of Person Incorporating Change

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER

- 1 OVERVIEW
- 2 SERVICE-LEVEL MISSION TASKS MATRIX
- 3 COLLECTIVE TRAINING
- 4 INDIVIDUAL TRAINING

ANNEX

- A AAV GUNNERY TRAINING TABLE CHECKLISTS
- B ORDNANCE REQUIREMENTS

This page left intentionally blank.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

	<u>Paragraph</u>	<u>Page</u>
INTRODUCTION.....	1000	1-2
CORNERSTONE ORDERS.....	1010	1-2
ORGANIZATION.....	1020	1-3
T&R EVENT CODING.....	1030	1-4
EVALUATION-CODED (E-CODED) EVENTS.....	1040	1-5
COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP) CALCULATION.....	1050	1-6
T&R EVENT COMPOSITION.....	1060	1-7
UNIT TRAINING.....	1070	1-10
REQUIREMENTS FOR COLLECTIVE TRAINING.....	1080	1-10
NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) TRAINING.....	1090	1-11
NIGHT TRAINING.....	1100	1-11
APPLICATION OF SIMULATION.....	1110	1-12
UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT.....	1120	1-12
EVALUATION OF TRAINING.....	1130	1-13
OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM).....	1140	1-13
CONCLUSION.....	1150	1-14

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1000. INTRODUCTION

1. The Training and Readiness (T&R) Program is intended to become the Corps' primary tool for planning, conducting, and evaluating training, and for assessing training readiness. The operating forces and supporting establishments have developed Mission Essential Task Lists (METLs) for ground communities using Marine Corps doctrine, Table of Organization (T/O) missions, Operational Plans, Contingency Plans, and tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTP). T&R Manuals are built around these service-level METLs; all events contained in T&R Manuals relate directly back to this METL. The comprehensive T&R Program ensures the Marine Corps continues to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps' ability to accomplish all assigned missions.

2. The T&R Manual is a single document that seeks to capture the collective and individual training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. The T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to conduct training. Instead, it seeks to provide a framework, linked to a myriad of references, in order to provide a baseline to design, conduct, and assess training that Marines must be able to perform in combat. The T&R manual is a fundamental tool for commanders to build and maintain unit combat readiness. Using this tool, commanders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit's METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program may be found in reference (a).

1010. CORNERSTONE ORDERS

Guidance for all training and evaluation in the Marine Corps, from entry-level training at the formal schools to advanced Professional Military Education (PME) for senior enlisted and officers, is found in the Cornerstone Orders. All training and evaluation programs throughout the Marine Corps were designed based on the guidance provided in these orders. The Cornerstone Orders are:

- MCO 1553.1B The Marine Corps Education and Training System
- MCO 1553.2A Management for Marine Corps Formal Schools and Training Centers
- MCO 1553.3A Unit Training Management
- MCO 1553.4a Professional Military Education

1020. ORGANIZATION

1. T&R Manuals are organized in one of two methods: unit-based or community-based. Unit-based are written to support a type unit (i.e. Infantry, Artillery, Tanks, etc). Community-based are written to support an Occupational Field, a group of related Military Occupational Specialties (MOSs), or billets within an organization (i.e. EOD, NBC, Intel, etc). T&R Manuals are comprised of chapters that contain unit Mission Essential Tasks (METs), collective training standards (CTS), and individual training standards (ITS) for each MOS, billet, etc.

2. The Assault Amphibian Unit T&R Manual is unit-based. It includes the following chapters:

A. Table of Contents

B. Service-Level Mission Essential Tasks Matrix. This matrix provides the Mission Essential Task with all evaluation-coded events that support each MET.

C. Collective Training Chapter. All information regarding collective training for AA units is located in this chapter.

1) Index of Collective Events

2) Unit Descriptions and Core Capabilities

3) Collective Events

D. Individual Training Chapter (organized by training level)

1) Index of Individual Events

2) Billet Descriptions and Core Capabilities

3) Basic Assault Amphibian Skills - MOS 18X3

4) Assault Amphibian Enlisted Events - MOS 1833

5) Assault Amphibian Officer Events - MOS 1803

E. AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists Annex. This annex provides detailed information on performance steps, scoring, and ammunition requirements for each AAV gunnery table.

F. Ordnance Requirements Annex. This annex provides a summary of all training requirements requiring ammunition and the total impact.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1030. T&R EVENT CODING

T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has a 4-4-4-digit identifier. The first four digits represent the MOS or occupational field (e.g. 1833, 18X3, etc.). For the AA Unit T&R Manual, the first four digits will be either "18X3," "1833," or "1803." "18X3" pertains to the entire Assault Amphibian occupational field, collective and individual. "1803" and "1833" pertain to individual events, officers and enlisted respectively. The second four digits represent the functional or duty area (e.g. Defense (DEF), Fire Support (FSPT), Movement (MVMT), etc.). The last four digits represent the level, duty area, and identifier number of the event. Every event has an identifier number from 001 to 999. The event is assigned to a duty area for quick reference. The duty areas are broken down into the following:

<u>100 Level</u>	<u>Duty Area</u>	<u>Description</u>
000	See below	Individual Events (ITS)
100	AMPH	Amphibious Operations
200	CMND	Command and Communications
300	CSS	Combat Service Support Operations
400	DEF	Defensive Operations
500	MCM	Mine Countermeasure Operations
600	MECH	Mechanized Operations
700	OFF	Offensive Operations
800	VEH	Vehicle Operations
900	WPNS	Weapons/Gunnery Operations

The duty areas for individual events will be the following:

<u>Duty Area</u>	<u>Description</u>
CORE	Core skills taught at Formal School to <i>both</i> MOS 1833s and 1803s.
AAOC	Assault Amphibian Officer Course. Core skills taught at Formal School <i>only</i> to MOS 1803s.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

AULC Amphibian Unit Leader Course
 MOJT Managed on the job training

The T&R levels are shown in Figure (1). An example of the T&R coding used in this manual is shown in Figure (2).

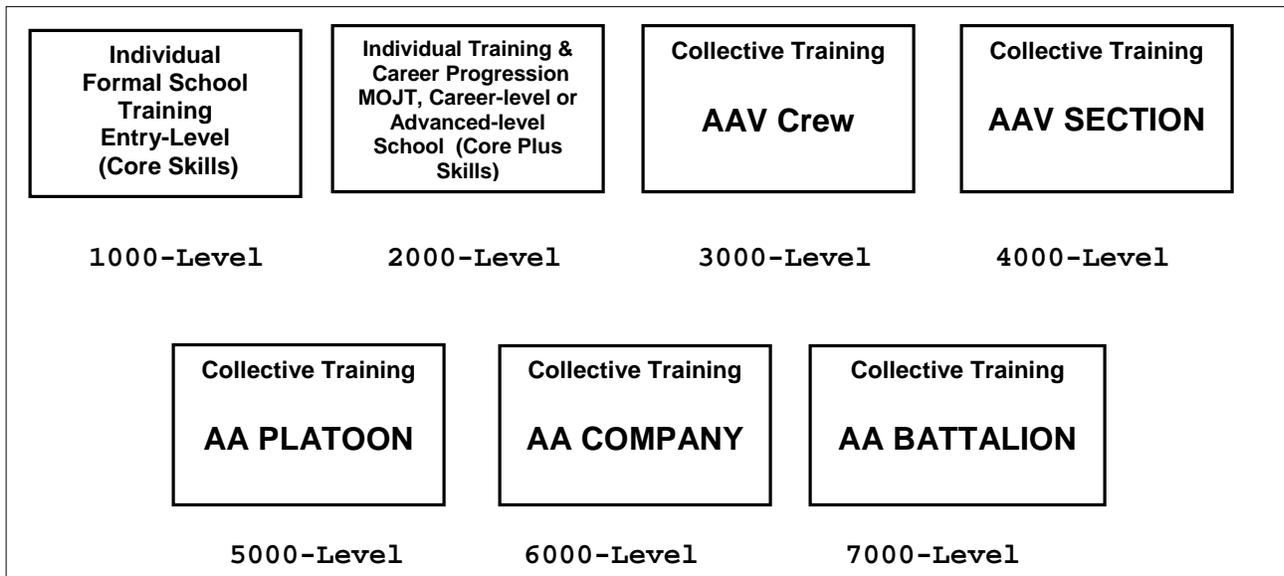


Figure 1: T&R Event Levels

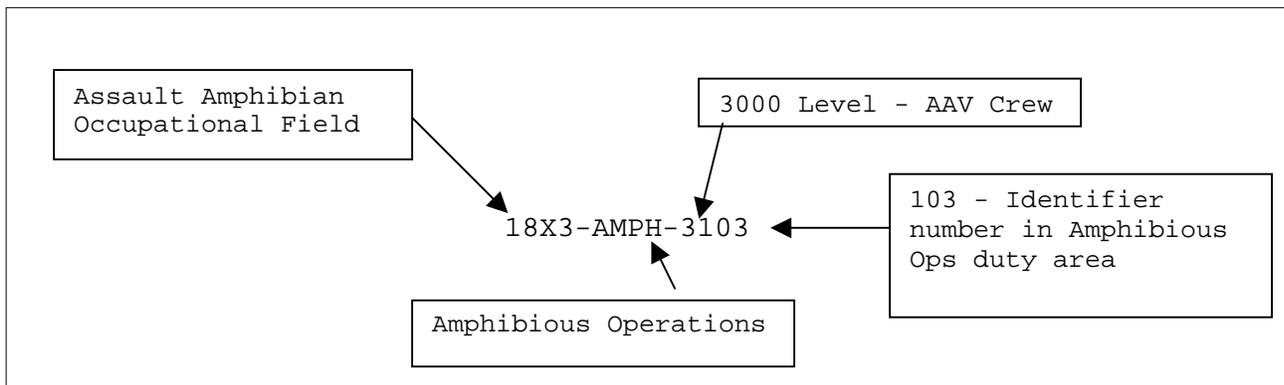


Figure 2: T&R Event Coding

1040. EVALUATION-CODED (E-CODED) EVENTS

1. With limited time and material resources, it is imperative that commanders prioritize training in order to ensure their units are trained in those skills essential to accomplishing

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

their mission. To assist with prioritization, certain events in the T&R manual are Evaluation-Coded (E-coded). Only significant events (collective or individual) that are critical components of a MET or are key indicators of a unit's readiness are E-coded. Only E-coded events are used to calculate Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP) for each MET.

2. Per reference (b), all commanders in the operating forces are required to develop a unit METL based on the Universal Joint Task List (UJTL), Universal Navy Task List (UNTL), Marine Corps Task List (MCTL), doctrine, T/O mission statement, higher headquarters' METLs, contingency plans and the assigned mission. The use of a METL-based training program allows the commander discretion in training and makes the T&R Manual a training tool rather than a prescriptive checklist.

3. Typically, not all units will have an identical METL, based on environmental factors, roles and missions, and training focus. Therefore, only E-coded events that support a unit's approved METL will be used to calculate CRP. The commander, based on his higher headquarters METL and the assigned mission, develops the METL for the unit. For example, there may be a total of seven METs in the T&R Manual, but only five are on the commander's approved METL for his specific unit. Unit CRP is based on only the five events on the approved METL.

1050. COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP) CALCULATION

1. Unit training plans shall be designed to accomplish the events that support the unit METL while simultaneously sustaining proficiency in individual core skills. Using the battalion-based (unit) model, the battalion (7000-level) has events that directly support a MET on the unit's METL. These events are E-coded and are the only events that contribute to unit CRP. This is done to assist commanders in prioritizing the training toward their unit's METL, taking into account resource, time, and personnel constraints.

2. Unit CRP increases after the completion of E-coded events. The number of E-coded events for the MET determines the value of each E-coded event for that particular MET. All E-coded events have equal value for CRP calculation. For example, if there are four E-coded events for a MET, each is worth 25% of MET CRP. If a MET has eight E-Coded events, then each is worth 12.5%. MET CRP is calculated by adding the percentage of each completed E-coded training event. The percentage for each MET is calculated the same way and all are added together and divided by the number of METS to determine unit CRP. For ease of calculation, we will say that a MET has four E-coded events; each contributes 25% towards the completion of the MET. If the unit has completed three of the four E-coded events for the MET, it has attained 75%

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CRP for that MET. The CRP for each MET is added together and divided by the number of METS to get unit CRP; unit CRP is the average of MET CRP. For Example:

MET 1: 75% (3 of 4 E-coded events trained)
MET 2: 100% (6 of 6 E-coded events trained)
MET 3: 25% (1 of 4 E-coded events trained)
MET 4: 50% (2 of 4 E-coded events trained)
MET 5: 75% (3 of 4 E-coded events trained)

To get unit CRP, simply add the CRP for each MET and divide by the number of METS:

MET CRP: $75 + 100 + 25 + 50 + 75 = 325$

Unit CRP: 325 (total MET CRP) / 5 (total number of METS) = 65%

1060. T&R EVENT COMPOSITION

This section explains each of the components of a T&R event. These items will be included in all of the events in each T&R Manual. Community-based T&R Manuals will have several additional components not found in unit-based T&R Manuals.

a. Event Code (see Sect 106): The event code is a 4-4-4-character set:

1. First 4 characters indicate MOS or Community (e.g., 1812 or TANK or AT)
2. Second 4 characters indicate functional or duty area (e.g. DEF, FSPT, MVMT, etc.)
3. Third 4 characters indicate the level and sequence (1000 through 8000)

b. Title: The name of the event.

c. Evaluation Coded. This is a "yes/no" category to indicate whether or not the event is E-coded. If yes, the event contributes toward CRP of the associated MET. The value of each E-coded event is based on number of E-coded events for that MET. Refer to Section 104 for a more detailed explanation of E-coded events.

d. Supported MET(s). List all METs that are supported by the training event.

e. Sustainment Interval. This is the period, expressed in number of months, between evaluation or retraining requirements. Skills and capabilities acquired through the accomplishment of

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

training events are to be refreshed at pre-determined intervals. It is essential that these intervals be adhered to in order to ensure the unit and Marines of the unit maintain proficiency.

f. Billet. Each individual training event will contain a billet code within the community that designates who (by billet) is responsible for performing that event and any corresponding formal course required for that billet. Each commander has the flexibility to shift responsibilities based on the organization of his command. These codes are based on recommendations from the collective subject matter expertise that developed the manual and are listed for each event. (NOTE: applicable to Community-based T&R manuals only).

g. Grade. The rank at which Marines are required to complete the event (NOTE: applicable to Community-based T&R manuals only).

h. Description: Description of event purpose, objectives, goals, and requirements. It is a general description of an action requiring learned skills and knowledge, i.e., Engage fixed target with crew-served weapons.

i. Condition. The condition(s) set for real world or combat circumstance in which the task is to be performed. They indicate what is provided (equipment, tools, materials, manuals, aids, etc.), environmental constraints or conditions under which the task is performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this should be stated.

j. Standard. The performance standard indicates the basis for judging the effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and must be strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events will likely be general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event. The standard for individual events will more specifically describe to what proficiency level, specified in terms of accuracy, speed, sequencing, quality of performance, adherence to procedural guidelines, etc., the event is to be accomplished.

k. Event Components/Performance Steps. Description of the actions that the event is composed of, or a list of subordinate, included T&R event codes and event descriptions. The event components help the user determine what must be accomplished and to properly plan for the event. Event components are used for collective events; performance steps are used for individual events.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

l. Prerequisite Events. Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event. They can also be planning steps, administrative requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission accomplishment.

m. Chained Events. Collective T&R events are supported by lower-level collective and individual T&R events. This enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate T&R events that ultimately support specific mission essential tasks. When the accomplishment of any upper-level events, by their nature, result in the performance of certain subordinate and related events, the events are "chained." The completion of chained events will update sustainment interval credit (and CRP for E-coded events) for the related subordinate level events. This does not pertain to this AA Unit T&R manual. However, as the T&R management and tracking program develops, Chained Events will be utilized.

n. Related CTSS. A list of all of the Collective Training Standards that support the event.

o. Related ITSS. A list of all of the Individual Training Standards that support the event.

p. References. The training references shall be utilized to determine task performance steps, grading criteria, and ensure standardization of training procedures. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. Since T&R Manuals provided only a training outline, references are key to developing lesson plans and adding specificity, such as performance steps, related doctrine, or other detailed information.

q. Distance Learning Products. (I.e., Individual Multimedia Instruction (IMI), Computer-Based Training (CBT), Marine Corps Institute (MCI), etc. Included when the event can be taught via one of these media methods vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT. (NOTE: applicable to Community-based T&R Manuals only).

r. Support Requirements. This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. This is a key section in the overall T&R effort, as resources will eventually be tied directly to the training towards METS. Future efforts to attain and allocate resources will be based on the requirements outlined in the T&R Manual. The list includes, but is not limited to:

- Range(s)/Training Area

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

- Ordnance
- Equipment
- Materials
- Other Units/Personnel

s. Misc. Any additional information that will assist in the planning and execution of the event. The list may include, but is not limited to:

- Admin Instructions
- Special Personnel Certifications
- Equipment Operating Hours
- Road Miles

1070. UNIT TRAINING

1. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R Program. Unit readiness and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine's ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential; however, it is not necessary to have all individuals within an organization fully trained in order for that organization to accomplish its assigned tasks. Manpower shortfalls, temporary assignments, leave, or other factors outside the commander's control, often affect the ability to conduct individual training. Regardless of current manning, the unit must maintain the ability to accomplish its assigned mission.

2. Commanders shall ensure that all tactical training is focused on their combat mission. The T&R manual serves as a tool to help develop the unit's training plan. Tactical training shall support the unit METL and be tailored to meet T&R standards. Commanders at all levels are responsible for effective combat training.

3. Commanders shall provide personnel the opportunities to attend formal and operational level courses of instruction as outlined in this Manual. Attendance at formal courses should enhance the warfighting capabilities of the unit as determined by the unit commander.

1080. REQUIREMENTS FOR COLLECTIVE TRAINING

Collective training shall serve to achieve standards of unit proficiency required to accomplish wartime missions. Subject to such constraints as safety requirements and limits on space for training, all collective training shall be conducted under conditions and rates of activity closely approximating those that

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

the units being trained may encounter in combat. When constraints limit the use of realistic training conditions, then simulation and other products of training technology shall be used as applicable to enhance realism. Collective training, to the degree feasible, shall include electronic warfare activity; nuclear, biological, and chemical defense activity; and the periodic use of opposing forces trained in the tactics of potential adversaries. All collective training exercises shall emphasize realistic performance of the functions of individual personnel in the exercising units. Support units shall be integrated into exercises for realistic training in their wartime supporting roles.

1090. NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) TRAINING

All personnel assigned to the operating force must be trained in Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense (NBCD) in order to survive and continue their mission in an NBC environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive NBC attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the individual, and collectively the unit, must be capable of performing to continue operations in an NBC environment. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in an NBC environment, NBC training should be an integral part of the training plan and events in this T&R manual should be trained under NBC conditions whenever possible. Per reference (i), all units must be capable of accomplishing their assigned mission in a contaminated environment. Further guidance on NBC training can be found in reference (j).

1100. NIGHT TRAINING

While it is understood that all personnel and units of the operating force must be capable of performing their assigned mission in "every clime and place," current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited. To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission at night as well as during the day, they must train under the more difficult limited visibility conditions. As such, all events in this T&R manual should be conducted during the day and at night or under conditions of limited visibility. Commanders will ensure units are capable of conducting all T&R events under conditions of darkness/limited visibility.

1110. APPLICATION OF SIMULATION

Simulators and other training devices for weapon systems and equipment shall be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on the actual equipment. Particular emphasis shall be placed on simulators that provide training that might be limited by safety considerations or constraints on training space, time, or other resources. When deciding on simulation issues, the primary consideration shall be improving the quality of training and consequently the state of readiness. Potential savings in operating and support costs normally shall be an important secondary consideration.

1120. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT

1. Unit Training Management (UTM) is the application of the Systems Approach to Training (SAT) and the Marine Corps Training Principles in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit in preparation for the conduct of its wartime mission.

2. UTM focuses training on the tasks that are essential to a unit's wartime capabilities. The SAT process provides commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate the training of their unit. The Marine Corps Training Principles provide sound and proven direction and are flexible enough to accommodate the demands of local conditions. They are guides that commanders can use to manage unit-training programs. The Marine Corps training principles are:

- Train as you fight
- Make commanders responsible for training
- Use standards-based training
- Use performance-oriented training
- Use mission-oriented training
- Train the MAGTF to fight as a combined arms team
- Train to sustain proficiency
- Train to challenge

3. In order to maintain an efficient, effective training program, it is imperative that commanders at every level fully understand and implement UTM. Guidance for UTM and the process for establishing effective UTM programs are contained in references (b), (c), and (d).

1130. EVALUATION OF TRAINING

1. Evaluation is a continuous process. Evaluation is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of the planning and conduct of training. Training evaluations measure individual and collective ability to perform events specified in the respective T&R Manuals. To ensure training is efficient and effective, it is imperative that evaluation is an integral part of the training plan.

2. The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit's proficiency in the tasks it must successfully perform in combat. Informal evaluations should be conducted during every training evolution. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit's METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level E-coded collective events. All collective training and exercises shall be evaluated against established standards of mission proficiency for identifying and correcting deficiencies. References (a) and (b) provide further guidance on the conduct of informal and formal evaluations utilizing the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program.

1140. OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

ORM is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a decision making tool used by Marines at all levels to increase operational effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the probability of a successful mission. ORM minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment. Commanders, leaders, maintainers, planners, and schedulers shall integrate risk assessment in the decision-making process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the ORM process will reduce mishaps, lower costs, and provide for more efficient use of resources. ORM assists the commander in conserving lives and resources and avoiding unnecessary risk, making an informed decision to implement a course of action (COA), identifying feasible and effective control measures where specific measures do not exist, and providing reasonable alternatives for mission accomplishment. Most importantly, ORM assists the commander in determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, the impact of training operations on the environment, and the adjustment of training plans to fit the level of proficiency and experience of Marines and leaders. Further guidance for ORM can be found in references (b) and (e).

1150. CONCLUSION

The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program continues to evolve. The vision for this program is that it will link the Uniform Joint Task List (UJTL), the Uniform Navy Task List (UNTL), and the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL) to METLs and unit training. In doing so, it will tie all training and training resources directly to unit missions. The Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS) is currently being developed and will eventually encompass Enhanced Status of Readiness and Training System (ESORTS). The purpose of this system is to measure and report on the readiness of military forces and the supporting infrastructure to meet missions and goals assigned by the Secretary of Defense. Training readiness in DRRS will be based primarily on METs. Because unit CRP is based on the unit's training towards its METs, it will provide a more accurate picture of a unit's ability to accomplish its mission. This will give fidelity to future funding requests and factor into the allocation of resources. Additionally, the Ground T&R Program will help to ensure training remains focused on mission accomplishment and that training readiness reporting is tied to commanders' METLs.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

SERVICE-LEVEL MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

1000. SERVICE-LEVEL MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX. The Service-Level Mission Essential Task List (METL) Table includes the designated MET number. The following event codes are the linked evaluation coded events that support the MET.

#	SERVICE LEVEL MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK	EVALUATION CODED EVENTS
1	Maneuver assault elements during the ship-to-shore movement and other amphibious operations.	18X3-AMPH-3142 Perform AAV Crew Water Operation Qualification 18X3-AMPH-5137 Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement 18X3-AMPH-3136 Operate AAV in the Water
2	Provide tactical mobility to assault elements in mechanized or other combat support operations during subsequent operations ashore.	18X3-DEF -5137 Support Infantry Defensive operations 18X3-OFF -5137 Support Infantry Offensive operations 18X3-WPNS-3923 Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification 18X3-WPNS-4925 Perform AA Section Gunnery Qualification
3	Provide special staff augmentation and support for the planning and coordination of mechanized and amphibious operations.	18X3-AMPH-7133 Assist in development of Landing Plan 18X3-AMPH-5137 Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement 18X3-DEF -5137 Support Infantry Defensive operations 18X3-OFF -5137 Support Infantry Offensive Operations
4	Direct and coordinate internal command, control, and support actions for the entire AA Battalion.	18X3-CMND-7212 Develop Operations Order 18X3-CMND-7217 Conduct Marine Corps Planning Process 18X3-CMND-7238 Establish Combat Operations Center (COC) 18X3-CSS -7332 Conduct Local Security of the Assembly Area 18X3-CSS -7334 Conduct Logistic Operations Center (LOC) Ops

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

5	Provide the organic command and control systems support for designated units.	18X3-DEF -5137 Support Infantry Defensive operations 18X3-OFF -5137 Support Infantry Offensive operations
6	Provide organic maintenance and logistics support to assault amphibian units.	18X3-CSS -7334 Conduct Logistic Operations Center (LOC) Ops 18X3-CSS -7335 Plan Combat Service Support Operations
7	Provide fire support within the capability of the organic weapon systems.	18X3-WPNS-3923 Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification 18X3-WPNS-4925 Perform AA Section Gunnery Qualification
8	Provide support in the clearing of lanes through minefields and other obstacles during combat operations.	18X3-MCM -3506 Operate MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System 18X3-MCM -5589 Participate in Deliberate Breach 18X3-WPNS-3923 Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification 18X3-WPNS-4925 Perform AA Section Gunnery Qualification

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE TRAINING

	<u>Page</u>
APPENDIX	
A INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS.....	3-A-1
B COLLECTIVE UNIT CORE CAPABILITIES.....	3-B-1
C COLLECTIVE TRAINING EVENTS.....	3-C-1

This page left intentionally blank.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

APPENDIX A

INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

3000. INDEX SORTED BY DUTY AREA

Event Code	Event	Page Number
	AMPHIBIOUS/WATERBORNE OPERATIONS	3-C-3
AAVS-AMPH-3132	Perform AAV Crew Water Operation Qualification	3-C-3
AAVS-AMPH-3136	Operate AAV in the Water	3-C-4
AAVS-AMPH-3142	Conduct Emergency Procedures Afloat	3-C-5
AAVS-AMPH-4143	Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/Sinking AAV	3-C-6
AAVS-AMPH-4144	Recover Disabled AAV in the Water Using Other AAVs	3-C-7
AAVS-AMPH-5135	Prepare AA Platoon for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping	3-C-9
AAVS-AMPH-5137	Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement	3-C-11
AAVS-AMPH-5138	Conduct Amphibious Demonstration	3-C-13
AAVS-AMPH-5139	Participate in Amphibious Assault	3-C-15
AAVS-AMPH-5140	Participate in Amphibious Raid	3-C-17
AAVS-AMPH-5141	Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal	3-C-19
AAVS-AMPH-6104	Conduct Surf Survival Training	3-C-21
AAVS-AMPH-7133	Assist in Developing the Landing Plan	3-C-23
AAVS-AMPH-7134	Analyze Landing Plan	3-C-25
	COMMAND AND COMMUNICATIONS	3-C-27
AAVS-CMND-3242	Control Radio Communications	3-C-27
AAVS-CMND-4202	Conduct Command Section Operations*	3-C-28
AAVS-CMND-7206	Maintain a Ground Safety Program	3-C-29
AAVS-CMND-7214	Develop Operations Order	3-C-30
AAVS-CMND-7217	Conduct Marine Corps Planning Process	3-C-31
AAVS-CMND-7219	Develop Scheme of Intelligence Support	3-C-32
AAVS-CMND-7238	Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)	3-C-33
AAVS-CMND-7244	Conduct Passive Electronic Countermeasures	3-C-35
AAVS-CMND-7245	Operate Without Communications	3-C-36
	COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT OPERATIONS	3-C-37
AAVS-CSS -3355	Refuel an AAV	3-C-37
AAVS-CSS -5364	Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations	3-C-38
AAVS-CSS -6361	Conduct Combat Train Employment	3-C-39
AAVS-CSS -7330	Occupy Assembly Area	3-C-40
AAVS-CSS -7331	Conduct Quartering Party Operations	3-C-41

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Event Code	Event	Page Number
AAVS-CSS -7332	Conduct Local Security of the Assembly Area	3-C-42
AAVS-CSS -7334	Conduct Logistic Operations Center (LOC) Operations	3-C-43
AAVS-CSS -7335	Plan Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations	3-C-45
AAVS-CSS -7336	Conduct Resupply Operations	3-C-46
AAVS-CSS -7348	Support Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPF) Operations During Planning and Execution	3-C-47
AAVS-CSS -7349	Develop Plans to Embark AA Unit	3-C-48
AAVS-CSS -7351	Embark AAVs Onto Strategic Transportation	3-C-49
AAVS-CSS -7360	Conduct Logistics Trains	3-C-50
AAVS-CSS -7362	Conduct Contact and Recovery Team Operations	3-C-51
	DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS	3-C-52
AAVS-DEF -3409	Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions	3-C-52
AAVS-DEF -5401	Support Infantry Defensive Operations	3-C-53
AAVS-DEF -5408	Prepare AAV Fighting Positions	3-C-55
AAVS-DEF -5411	Employ Operational Security	3-C-57
AAVS-DEF -7471	Conduct Hasty Decontamination for AA Unit in NBC Environment	3-C-58
	MINE COUNTERMEASURE OPERATIONS	3-C-59
AAVS-MCM -3506	Employ MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System**	3-C-59
AAVS-MCM -4585	Breach Obstacle	3-C-60
AAVS-MCM -5589	Participate in Deliberate Breach	3-C-62
AAVS-MCM -4590	Conduct Amphibious Breaching	3-C-64
	MECHANIZED OPERATIONS	3-C-66
AAVS-MECH-5625	Employ Column Formation	3-C-66
AAVS-MECH-5626	Employ Vee Formation	3-C-67
AAVS-MECH-5627	Employ Wedge Formation	3-C-68
AAVS-MECH-5628	Employ Line Formation	3-C-69
AAVS-MECH-5629	Employ Echelon Formation	3-C-70
AAVS-MECH-5633	Conduct Tactical Road March	3-C-71
AAVS-MECH-5634	Employ Herringbone Formation	3-C-72
AAVS-MECH-5635	Conduct Tactical Halt	3-C-73
AAVS-MECH-5636	Employ Coil Formation	3-C-74
AAVS-MECH-5641	Conduct Riverine Operations	3-C-75
AAVS-MECH-5642	Cross a River	3-C-76
AAVS-MECH-5656	Employ Traveling	3-C-77
AAVS-MECH-5657	Employ Traveling Overwatch	3-C-78
AAVS-MECH-5658	Employ Bounding Overwatch	3-C-79
AAVS-MECH-5659	Cross Danger Area	3-C-80
	OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS	3-C-81
AAVS-OFF -4783	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance	3-C-81
AAVS-OFF -4784	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization	3-C-82
AAVS-OFF -5764	Conduct Immediate Action Drills	3-C-83
AAVS-OFF -5767	Conduct Actions on Contact	3-C-84

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Event Code	Event	Page Number
AAVS-OFF -5771	Support Infantry Offensive Operations	3-C-85
AAVS-OFF -5772	Conduct Attack Position Activities	3-C-87
AAVS-OFF -5773	Conduct Link Up	3-C-88
AAVS-OFF -5775	Conduct Passage of Lines	3-C-89
AAVS-OFF -5776	Conduct Dismount Point Activities	3-C-90
AAVS-OFF -5785	Conduct Spoiling Attack	3-C-91
AAVS-OFF -4787	Support a Mechanized Patrol	3-C-92
AAVS-OFF -5790	Support Military Operations in Urban Terrain	3-C-93
	VEHICLE OPERATIONS	3-C-94
AAVS-VEH -3828	Conduct Hasty Demolition to Prevent Enemy Use	3-C-94
AAVS-VEH -3838	Start AAV Engine from Outside Power Source	3-C-95
AAVS-VEH -3853	Operate AAV on Land	3-C-96
AAVS-VEH -3854	Evacuate Wounded Crewmember from Each Crew Station	3-C-97
AAVS-VEH -3855	Employ Terrain Driving Techniques	3-C-98
AAVS-VEH -4839	Tow Start an AAV	3-C-99
AAVS-VEH -4841	Tow AAV on Land	3-C-100
AAVS-VEH -4845	Recover Disabled AAV	3-C-101
AAVS-VEH -5827	Employ Smoke Generation System	3-C-102
	WEAPONS/GUNNERY OPERATIONS	3-C-103
AAVS-WPNS-3920	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6 (Crew)	3-C-103
AAVS-WPNS-3921	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7 (Crew)	3-C-104
AAVS-WPNS-3922	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8 (Crew)	3-C-105
AAVS-WPNS-3923	Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification	3-C-106
AAVS-WPNS-4924	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 9 (Section)	3-C-107
AAVS-WPNS-4925	Perform AA Section Gunnery Qualification	3-C-109
AAVS-WPNS-5980	Conduct Live Fire and Maneuver Assault	3-C-111

* For Command Section Only

** For MCM Vehicles Only

3010. INDEX SORTED BY LEVEL (UNIT)

A. AAV Crew

Event Code	Event	Page Number
AAVS-AMPH-3132	Perform AAV Crew Water Operation Qualification	3-C-3
AAVS-AMPH-3136	Operate AAV in the Water	3-C-4
AAVS-AMPH-3142	Conduct Emergency Procedures Afloat	3-C-5
AAVS-AMPH-3143	Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/Sinking AAV	3-C-6
AAVS-CMND-3242	Control Radio Communications	3-C-27
AAVS-CSS -3355	Refuel an AAV	3-C-37
AAVS-DEF -3409	Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions	3-C-52
AAVS-MCM -3506	Employ MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System**	3-C-59

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Event Code	Event	Page Number
AAVS-VEH -3828	Conduct Hasty Demolition to Prevent Enemy Use	3-C-94
AAVS-VEH -3838	Start AAV Engine from Outside Power Source	3-C-95
AAVS-VEH -3853	Operate AAV on Land	3-C-96
AAVS-VEH -3854	Evacuate Wounded Crewmember from each Crew Station	3-C-97
AAVS-VEH -3855	Employ Terrain Driving Techniques	3-C-98
AAVS-WPNS-3920	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6 (Crew)	3-C-103
AAVS-WPNS-3921	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7 (Crew)	3-C-104
AAVS-WPNS-3922	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8 (Crew)	3-C-105
AAVS-WPNS-3923	Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification	3-C-106

** For MCM Vehicles Only

B. AAV Section

Event Code	Event	Page Number
AAVS-AMPH-4144	Recover Disabled AAV in the Water Using Other AAVs	3-C-7
AAVS-CMND-4202	Conduct Command Section Operations*	3-C-28
AAVS-OFF -4783	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance	3-C-81
AAVS-OFF -4784	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization	3-C-82
AAVS-VEH -4839	Tow Start an AAV	3-C-99
AAVS-VEH -4841	Tow AAV on Land	3-C-100
AAVS-VEH -4845	Recover Disabled AAV	3-C-101
AAVS-WPNS-4924	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 9 (Section)	3-C-107
AAVS-WPNS-4925	Perform AA Section Gunnery Qualification	3-C-109

* For Command Section Only

C. AA Platoon

Event Code	Event	Page Number
AAVS-AMPH-5135	Prepare AA Platoon for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping	3-C-9
AAVS-AMPH-5137	Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement	3-C-11
AAVS-AMPH-5138	Conduct Amphibious Demonstration	3-C-13
AAVS-AMPH-5139	Participate in Amphibious Assault	3-C-15
AAVS-AMPH-5140	Participate in Amphibious Raid	3-C-17
AAVS-AMPH-5141	Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal	3-C-19
AAVS-CSS -5364	Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations	3-C-38
AAVS-DEF -5401	Support Infantry Defensive Operations	3-C-53
AAVS-DEF -5408	Prepare AAV Fighting Positions	3-C-55
AAVS-DEF -5411	Employ Operational Security	3-C-57
AAVS-MCM -5585	Breach Obstacle	3-C-60
AAVS-MCM -5589	Participate in Deliberate Breach	3-C-62
AAVS-MCM -5590	Conduct Amphibious Breaching	3-C-64
AAVS-MECH-5625	Employ Column Formation	3-C-66

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Event Code	Event	Page Number
AAVS-MECH-5626	Employ Vee Formation	3-C-66
AAVS-MECH-5627	Employ Wedge Formation	3-C-67
AAVS-MECH-5628	Employ Line Formation	3-C-68
AAVS-MECH-5629	Employ Echelon Formation	3-C-69
AAVS-MECH-5633	Conduct Tactical Road March	3-C-70
AAVS-MECH-5634	Employ Herringbone Formation	3-C-71
AAVS-MECH-5635	Conduct Tactical Halt	3-C-72
AAVS-MECH-5636	Employ Coil Formation	3-C-73
AAVS-MECH-5641	Conduct Riverine Operations	3-C-74
AAVS-MECH-5642	Cross a River	3-C-75
AAVS-MECH-5656	Employ Traveling Technique	3-C-76
AAVS-MECH-5657	Employ Traveling Overwatch	3-C-77
AAVS-MECH-5658	Employ Bounding Overwatch	3-C-78
AAVS-MECH-5659	Cross Danger Area	3-C-79
AAVS-OFF -5764	Conduct Immediate Action Drills	3-C-80
AAVS-OFF -5767	Conduct Actions on Contact	3-C-83
AAVS-OFF -5771	Support Infantry Offensive Operations	3-C-84
AAVS-OFF -5772	Conduct Attack Position Activities	3-C-85
AAVS-OFF -5773	Conduct Link Up	3-C-87
AAVS-OFF -5775	Conduct Passage of Lines	3-C-88
AAVS-OFF -5776	Conduct Dismount Point Activities	3-C-89
AAVS-OFF -5785	Conduct Spoiling Attack	3-C-90
AAVS-OFF -5787	Support a Mechanized Patrol	3-C-91
AAVS-OFF -5790	Support Military Operations in Urban Terrain	3-C-92
AAVS-VEH -5827	Employ Smoke Generation System	3-C-93
AAVS-WPNS-5980	Conduct Live Fire and Maneuver Assault	3-C-102

D. AA Company

Event Code	Event	Page Number
AAVS-AMPH-6104	Conduct Surf Survival Training	3-C-21
AAVS-CSS -6361	Conduct Combat Train Employment	3-C-37

D. AA Battalion

Event Code	Event	Page Number
AAVS-AMPH-7133	Assist in Developing the Landing Plan	3-C-23
AAVS-AMPH-7134	Analyze Landing Plan	3-C-25
AAVS-CMND-7206	Maintain a Ground Safety Program	3-C-29
AAVS-CMND-7214	Develop Operations Order	3-C-30

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Event Code	Event	Page Number
AAVS-CMND-7217	Conduct Marine Corps Planning Process	3-C-31
AAVS-CMND-7219	Develop Scheme of Intelligence Support	3-C-32
AAVS-CMND-7238	Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)	3-C-33
AAVS-CMND-7244	Conduct Passive Electronic Countermeasures	3-C-35
AAVS-CMND-7245	Operate Without Communications	3-C-36
AAVS-CSS -7330	Occupy Assembly Area	3-C-40
AAVS-CSS -7331	Conduct Quartering Party Operations	3-C-41
AAVS-CSS -7332	Conduct Local Security of the Assembly Area	3-C-42
AAVS-CSS -7334	Conduct Logistic Operations Center (LOC) Operations	3-C-43
AAVS-CSS -7335	Plan Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations	3-C-45
AAVS-CSS -7336	Conduct Resupply Operations	3-C-46
AAVS-CSS -7348	Support Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPF) Operations During Planning and Execution	3-C-47
AAVS-CSS -7349	Develop Plans to Embark AA Unit	3-C-48
AAVS-CSS -7351	Embark AAVs onto Strategic Transportation	3-C-49
AAVS-CSS -7360	Conduct Logistics Trains	3-C-50
AAVS-CSS -7362	Conduct Contact and Recovery Team Operations	3-C-51
AAVS-CSS -7471	Conduct Hasty Decontamination for AA Unit in NBC Environment	3-C-58

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE EVENTS

APPENDIX B

COLLECTIVE CORE DESCRIPTION/CAPABILITIES

COLLECTIVE : AAV Crew, AAVP7A1/RAM RS

The mission of the AAVP7A1/RAM RS crew is to support the reinforced infantry squad within the mission of the AA section. The AAV crew is comprised of three personnel: the vehicle crewchief and two crewmen. The AAV crew operates the AAVP7A1. The crew is lead by the vehicle crewchief and operates under the direction of the AA section leader.

Core Capabilities

1. Operate the AAV on land and in water with vehicles in section.
 2. Transport embarked personnel and cargo.
 3. Employ the Upgunned Weapon Station.
 4. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
 5. Operate in NBC environment.
-

COLLECTIVE : AAV Crew, AAVC7A1

The mission of the AAVC7A1 crew is to support the battalion and regimental level headquarters as a mechanized command echelon/fire support coordination center. The AAVC7A1 intercommunications assets provide the embarked troop commander and his staff with the capability to communicate with each other and to remotely operate radio assets from staff positions within the vehicle. The AAVC7A1 weapon is primarily for self-defense. The AAVC7A1 crew is comprised of three personnel: the vehicle crewchief and two crewmen, and is augmented by a communication technician Marine. The crew is lead by the crewchief and operates under the direction of the AA command section leader.

Core Capabilities

1. Operate the AAVC7A1 on land and in water with vehicles in section.
 2. Operate the AAVC7A1 communications equipment.
 3. Employ the M240G medium machine gun.
 4. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
 5. Perform PMCS on communications equipment.
 6. Operate in NBC environment.
-

COLLECTIVE : AAV Crew, MK-154 LMC Mod 0 Kit

The mission of the AAVP7A1 with MK154 LMC Mod 0 kit, crew is to provide breaching capability for the AA Mine Countermeasure (MCM) Section. The AAV crew operates the AAVP7A1/RAM RS with MK-154 LMC Mod 0 kit. The crew is comprised of three personnel: the vehicle crewchief and two crewmen. The crew is lead by the vehicle crewchief and operates under the direction of the AA MCM section leader.

Core Capabilities

1. Operate the AAV on land and in water with vehicles in section.
 2. Employ the MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System.
 3. Employ the Upgunned Weapon Station.
 4. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
 5. Perform PMCS on MK-154 LMC Mod 0 equipment.
 6. Operate in NBC environment.
-

COLLECTIVE : AA Section

The mission of the AA section is to provide combat support to the infantry rifle platoon. The AA section consists of three AAV crews and is lead by the AA section leader. He exercises tactical control of his AAVs under the command of the AA platoon commander. Additionally, an AA section may be utilized for supporting units such as the 81mm mortar platoon or an engineer platoon.

Core Capabilities

1. Provide fire support and maneuverability for supported units.
 2. Conduct amphibious operations.
 3. Conduct mechanized operations.
 4. Conduct offensive operations.
 5. Conduct defensive operations.
 6. Employ AA section fires.
 7. Operate in NBC environment.
-

COLLECTIVE : AA Section, Command

The mission of the AAV command section is to provide battalion and regimental level staffs with a mechanized command center. The AA command sections also provides mutual support for the AAVC7A1 with a secondary vehicle for security and logistical support. The AA command section consists of AAVP7A1/RAM RS and AAVC7A1 vehicles.

Core Capabilities

1. Establish AAVC7A1 as command post.

2. Conduct amphibious operations.
 3. Conduct mechanized operations.
 4. Operate in NBC environment.
 5. Employ AA command section fires.
-

COLLECTIVE : AA Section, Mine Countermeasure Platoon

The mission of the AA Mine Countermeasure Section (MCM) is to provide breaching capability to the breach commander. The AA MCM section consists of four AAVP7A1/RAM RS vehicles with crews broken into two teams. The MCM section is lead by the AA MCM section leader.

Core Capabilities

1. Conduct breaching operations.
 2. Conduct amphibious operations.
 3. Conduct mechanized operations.
 4. Conduct defensive operations.
 5. Employ AA section fires.
 6. Operate in NBC environment.
-

COLLECTIVE : AA Platoon

The mission of the AA platoon is to land the surface assault element of the landing force and their equipment in a single lift from assault shipping by amphibious operations to inland objectives, and to conduct mechanized operations and related combat support in subsequent operations ashore. The AA platoon consists of 12 AAVP7A1 and is organized into four (4) sections of three vehicles. The platoon is lead by the AA platoon commander who directly advises the infantry company commander on AAV employment.

Core Capabilities

1. Provide fire support and maneuverability for supported unit.
 2. Conduct amphibious operations.
 3. Conduct mechanized operations.
 4. Conduct offensive operations.
 5. Conduct defensive operations.
 6. Employ AA platoon fires.
 7. Conduct operations in NBC environment.
-

COLLECTIVE : AA Platoon, Mine Countermeasure

The mission of Mine Countermeasure (MCM) platoon is to provide breaching capability to the breach commander. The AA MCM platoon is composed of 24 AAVP7A1/RAM RSs with crews, with 12 MK154 LMC Mod O Kits organized into four sections. The MCM platoon is lead by the platoon commander who supports the breach commander.

Core Capabilities

1. Conduct breaching operations.
 2. Conduct amphibious operations.
 3. Conduct mechanized operations.
 4. Conduct defensive operations.
 5. Employ AA MCM platoon fires.
 6. Conduct operations in NBC environment.
-

COLLECTIVE : AA Company

The mission of the AA company is to land the surface assault element of the landing force and their equipment in a single lift from assault shipping by amphibious operations to inland objectives, and to conduct mechanized operations and related combat support in subsequent operations ashore. The AA company supports mechanized, logistical, command and control, or recovery operations for the infantry battalion or supported unit. The AA company consists of two to five AA platoons and a maintenance platoon or detachment. The AA company consists of the AA company commander who leads the company staff and organic support detachments in support of detached AA platoons.

Core Capabilities

1. Conduct amphibious operations.
 2. Conduct mechanized operations.
 3. Conduct offensive operations.
 4. Conduct defensive operations.
 5. Conduct operations in support of mechanized operations.
 6. Employ vehicle and small unit fires.
 7. Conduct operations in an NBC environment.
-

COLLECTIVE : H&S Company

H&S Company provides the AA battalion commander and subordinate units combat service support and the means to affect command and control of the battalion. Through its subordinate platoons and sections, the H&S company provides maintenance, communications, administrative, medical, supply and other service support functions to the AA battalion. H&S company includes a headquarters platoon and a general support (GS) platoon which provides support to the battalion logistics train and command and control assets to the battalion and GCE maneuver units. The communications platoon installs, operates, and maintains the communication system for the battalion headquarters and is responsible for repairs through second echelon for all communications equipment organic to the battalion and supports the company communications sections, as required. The battalion maintenance platoon is responsible for third echelon maintenance of all tracked vehicles in the battalion. H&S company also includes supply and motor transport platoons. H&S company is lead by the H&S company commander.

Core Capabilities

1. Conduct combat service support operations in support of battalion.
 2. Provide higher echelon support of maintenance for the battalion units.
 3. Provide command and control infrastructure for battalion staff.
 4. Conduct rear area security for battalion support area.
 5. Conduct operations in NBC environment.
 6. Participate in convoy operations.
-

COLLECTIVE : Logistics Section, AA Battalion

The mission of the logistics section is to support the AA battalion in logistical planning and operations. The section consists of the battalion logistics officer and staff.

Core Capabilities

1. Plans, coordinates, and supervises combat service support operations.
 2. Plans, coordinates, and manages AA battalion maintenance operations.
 3. Plans and coordinates AA battalion assembly area activities.
 4. Coordinates logistical support and requirements with higher and adjacent units.
 5. Plans, coordinates, and supervises AA battalion embarkation operations.
 6. Monitors HAZMAT operations.
 7. Conducts operations in NBC environment.
-

COLLECTIVE : Operations Section, AA Battalion

The mission of the operations section is support the battalion in planning, training, and operations. The section consists of the battalion operations officer and staff.

Core Capabilities

1. Plans, coordinates, and implements mechanized operations.
 2. Plans, coordinates, and monitors unit and personnel training.
 3. Coordinates training, operational support, and requirements with higher and adjacent units.
 4. Conducts operations in NBC environment.
 5. Coordinates training and operations with AA battalion logistics section.
 6. Conducts COC operations.
 7. Plans future operations.
-

COLLECTIVE : Assault Amphibian Battalion

The mission of the assault amphibian battalion is to land the surface assault element of the landing force and their equipment in a single lift from assault shipping by amphibious operations to inland objectives, and to conduct mechanized operations and related combat support in subsequent operations ashore. The assault amphibian battalion augments the company's organic logistics capability by providing personnel, medical, resupply, and overflow second and third echelon maintenance. Although primarily employed to mechanize the surface assault elements of a Regimental Landing Team (RLT), assault amphibian battalion elements may be employed in a combat service support role forward of the Forward Line of Troops (FLOT) or in the beach support area. The battalion has the command, staff, and resources necessary to plan and execute mechanized operations as a maneuver control headquarters when augmented with combat and combat support forces. The battalion is comprised of at least two AA companies and an H&S company.

Core Capabilities

1. Conducts amphibious operations.
 2. Conducts mechanized operations.
 3. Provides staff, and command and control assets to plan and execute mechanized operations.
 4. Conducts combat service support operations.
 5. Conducts mechanized breaching support.
 6. Conducts operations in NBC environment.
-

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE EVENTS

APPENDIX C

COLLECTIVE TRAINING

Purpose:

This chapter includes all collective training events for AA units. A collective event is an event that an established AA unit (Crew, Section, Platoon, Company, or Battalion) would perform in combat. These events are linked to a Service-Level Mission Essential Task (MET). This linkage tailors collective and individual training for the selected MET.

Each collective event is composed of component events that provide the major actions required. This may be likely acts, list of functions, or procedures. Accomplishment and proficiency level required of component events is determined by the event standard.

Administrative Notes:

T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has a 4-4-4 digit identifier. The first four digits represent the MOS or occupational field (e.g. 1833, 18X3, AAVS, etc.). For collective units, the first four digits will be "AAVS," which pertains to AA Units (e.g. AAV crew, AA platoon, etc.). The second four digits represent the functional or duty area (e.g. Defense (DEF), Fire Support (FSPT), Movement (MVMT), etc.). The last four digits represent the level, duty area, and identifier number of the event. Every event has an identifier number from 001 to 999. The event is assigned to a duty area for quick reference.

This appendix breaks down all Assault Amphibian collective training into five levels:

- 3000 - AAV Crew
- 4000 - AAV Section
- 5000 - AA Platoon
- 6000 - AA Company
- 7000 - AA Battalion

The duty areas are broken down into the following:

- 100 AMPH - Amphibious Operations
- 200 CMND - Command and Communications
- 300 CSS - Combat Service Support Operations

400 DEF - Defensive Operations
500 MCM - Mine Countermeasure Operations
600 MECH - Mechanized Operations
700 OFF - Offensive Operations
800 VEH - Vehicle Operations
900 WPNS - Weapons/Gunnery Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-3132 Perform AAV Crew Water Operation Qualification

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2

Sustainment Interval: 3 Months

Condition:

Given an AA unit, amphibious shipping, requirement for multiple launches, and an Amphibious Operation Area.

Standard:

Conduct 3 launches, to include at least 1 static launch, 1 underway launch and a launch of either type during a period of limited visibility.

Component Events:

- Prepare AAV for debarkation from amphibious shipping.
- Debark from amphibious shipping in accordance with guidance from ship's well-deck personnel.
- Conduct static launch from amphibious shipping in accordance with guidance from ship's well-deck personnel.
- Conduct underway launch from amphibious shipping during daylight in accordance with guidance from ship's well-deck personnel.
- Conduct underway launch from amphibious shipping during darkness in accordance with guidance from ship's well-deck personnel.
- Operate AAV in the Water.

Related CTS:

18X3-AMPH-3136 - Operate AAV in the Water

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1081 - Operate AAVP7A1

18X3-CORE-1022 - Communicate Using AAV Communications Equipment

References:

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

Miscellaneous:

Admin Instructions:

1. Credit for completion of this event may be given by a commanding officer.
2. Evaluation for event must come from qualified evaluator outside chain of command.
3. The AAV crew will not get credit until all components are completed.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-3136 Operate AAV in the Water

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,3

Sustainment Interval: 3 Months

Condition:

The AAV crew is tasked with participating in a water operation with other AAVs. Communication with adjacent vehicle crews is required.

Standard:

The AAV crew follows all orders from the Wave Commander resulting in safe waterborne operation of the AAV from launch from amphibious shipping to landing on shore.

Component Events:

- Perform pre-water operations checks and services.
- Prepare the vehicle for waterborne operation.
- On signal from the Splash team or well deck personnel, drive the AAV into the water.
- Open hatches at the discretion of the vehicle commander.
- Deploy the bow plane.
- Drive the AAV through the water. Employ the track drive in addition to the water drive according to hydrography of the area.
- Operate the vehicle in the reverse and pivot modes.
- Retract the bow plane when approaching the ship, surf zone, or landing beach.
- Drive the AAV out of the water.
- Conduct after operations checks and services.

Related CTS:

18X3-VEH -3807 - Employ AAV Operational Safety Procedures

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1081 - Operate AAVP7A1

18X3-CORE-1022 - Communicate Using AAV Communications Equipment

References:

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

Ordnance:

L311	SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew
L312	SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-3142 Conduct Emergency Procedures Afloat

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1

Sustainment Interval: 3 Months

Condition:

While conducting water operations, an AAV becomes disabled.

Standard:

Accomplish each component event in accordance with the references.

Component Events:

- Conduct the procedures for a disabled AAV in the water.
- Conduct the procedures for a sinking AAV.

Related CTS:

18X3-CMND-3242 - Control Radio Communications
18X3-VEH -3807 - Employ AAV Operational Safety Procedures

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1081 - Operate AAVP7A1
18X3-CORE-1022 - Communicate Using AAV Communications Equipment
1833-AULC-2084 - Coordinate Recovery of Disabled AAV

References:

AAV Common SOP
Battalion SOP
TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle,
Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious
Forces

Ordnance:

L311	SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew
L312	SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-3143 Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/Sinking AAV

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1

Sustainment Interval: 3 Months

Condition:

While conducting water operations, an AAV with embarked personnel becomes disabled/begins to sink.

Standard:

All personnel on disabled/sinking AAV are safely embarked onto rescue AAV.

Component Events:

- Disabled/Sinking AAV alerts unit of distress.
- Move rescue AAV to disabled/sinking AAV and hold station to begin evacuation.
- Evacuate and transfer personnel from disabled/sinking AAV.

Related CTS:

18X3-AMPH-3142 - Conduct Emergency Procedures Afloat

18X3-VEH -3854 - Evacuate Wounded Crewmember from each Crew Station

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1012 - Perform AAV Operational Safety Procedures

1833-AULC-2084 - Coordinate Recovery of Disabled AAV

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

Ordnance:

L311 SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE 1 per crew

L312 SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE 1 per crew

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-4144 Recover Disabled AAV in the Water Using Other AAVs

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1

Sustainment Interval: 3 Months

Condition:

While conducting water operations, an AAV becomes disabled.

Standard:

Disabled AAV is towed to beach or amphibious shipping with no safety incidents in accordance with the references.

Component Events:

- Crewchief of the disabled AAV completes preparation for towing.
- The disabled vehicle retracts the bow plane.
- Driver of towing AAV positions the rescue vehicle in front of the disabled AAV.
- Crewman hook two towlines to the sea tow quick release and through the mooring cleats on towing vehicle.
- The crewchief of the disabled AAV directs his crew to hook the other end of towing lines to mooring cleats on his vehicle.
- A crewman is stationed at the ramp of the towing vehicle to observe the towed vehicle through the rear vision block.
- The hatches of both vehicles are secured prior to beginning towing.
- The vehicle is towed to the high water mark on the beach before releasing the towing lines and attaching the tow cable.
- The towing lines are removed and tow cables or a tow bar are properly employed to tow the vehicle.
- Pull sea tow quick-release in the event that the disabled vehicle begins to sink.

Related CTS:

18X3-AMPH-3142 - Conduct Emergency Procedures Afloat

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1012 - Perform AAV Operational Safety Procedures

1833-AULC-2084 - Coordinate Recovery of Disabled AAV

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious
Forces

Ordnance:

L311	SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew
L312	SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-5135 Prepare AA Platoon for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,3

Sustainment Interval: 3 Months

Condition:

While embarked on amphibious shipping, the AA platoon is in receipt of order to conduct debarkation from amphibious shipping.

Standard:

The AA platoon accomplishes all pre-water operation checks and meets pre-launch timeline resulting in all embarked personnel accounted for and no safety incidents.

Component Events:

- Conduct proper pre-water operation checks and services of AAVs.
- Conduct proper communications checks.
- Issue ammunition and pyrotechnics to AAVs.
- Ungripe the vehicles according to guidance from the ship's crew.
- Conduct safety orientation and issue life jackets to embarked personnel and crew.
- Embark troops.
- Position AAVs for launch under guidance from ship's well deck personnel.
- Place vehicles into water operating mode.
- Conduct splash team operations.

Related CTS:

18X3-VEH -3807 - Employ AAV Operational Safety Procedures

18X3-VEH -3808 - Employ Ground Guide Signals

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2014 - Coordinate Embarkation/Debarkation Plans from Amphibious Shipping with Naval Personnel

1833-AULC-2015 - Prepare the AA Unit for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping

References:

AAV Common SOP

LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation

MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious
Forces

Ordnance:

L311	SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew
L312	SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-5137 Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,3

Sustainment Interval: 3 Months

Condition:

The AA platoon has been ordered to conduct a waterborne ship-to-shore movement. Supported unit may or may not be embarked. Communication with Primary Control Ship and supporting fire agencies are available.

Standard:

Under the guidance of the Primary Control Ship's Combat Information Center and in accordance with the established timeline, the AA platoon launches from amphibious shipping, crosses the LD, moves through the boat lane and touches down within 50 meters of center beach in proper formation.

Component Events:

- Maneuver AAVs into required tactical wave formations per the landing plan after leaving the ship.
- Monitor communications with Primary Control Ship (PCS) and other AAVs in wave.
- Monitor internal communications.
- AAVs maintain proper formation and interval.
- AAVs guide on wave commander.
- AAVs maintain rate of march according to guidance from PCS or Global Positioning System (GPS) in order to achieve touchdown on time.
- Conduct emergency operations/vehicle recovery, if required.
- Conduct changes to waterborne formation outside the surf zone, as required.
- Control the sequence and employment of mine clearance systems from the surf zone through the high water mark and other beach obstacles.
- Move AAVs into cleared lanes.
- AA unit leaders report their waves' touchdown.
- Employ vehicle screening systems.
- Signal lifting or shifting of supporting fires.

Related CTS:

18X3-AMPH-5135 - Prepare AA Platoon for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping

18X3-AMPH-3136 - Operate AAV in the Water

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2017 - Perform Duties of Wave Commander
1833-AULC-2025 - Navigate in an AAV
1833-AULC-2016 - Develop Surf Observation (SUROB) Report
1833-AULC-2013 - Coordinate Embarkation/Debarkation Plans from Amphibious Shipping with Naval Personnel

References:

LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
MCRP 3-31.3A Over-the-Horizon Surface Amphibious Operations
MCWP 3-31.5 (FMFM 1-8) Ship-To-Shore Movement
MCWP 3-31.3 (NWP 3-59.3) Surf Zone Operations
TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

Ordnance:

L311	SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew
L312	SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-5138 Conduct Amphibious Demonstration

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,3

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The AA platoon has been ordered to conduct an amphibious demonstration. Supported unit may or may not be embarked.

Standard:

The water movement follows the Landing Plan from launch from amphibious shipping to re-embarkation on amphibious shipping. The enemy forces shift their focus to the demonstration.

Component Events:

- Execute Landing Plan from preparation phase through launch from amphibious shipping.
- Conduct waterborne movement in accordance with Landing Plan.
- Conduct embarkation of amphibious shipping in accordance with the references.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5135 - Prepare AA Platoon for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping
- 18X3-AMPH-3136 - Perform AAV Crew Water Operation Qualification
- 18X3-CMND-5242 - Control Radio Communications

Related ITS:

- 1833-AULC-2017 - Perform Duties of Wave Commander
- 1833-AULC-2025 - Navigate in an AAV

References:

- MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
- MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
- JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
- JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
- MCRP 3-31.3A Over-the-Horizon Surface Amphibious Operations
- MCWP 3-31.5 (FMFM 1-8) Ship-To-Shore Movement
- MCWP 3-31.1 (FMFM 1-7) Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
- MCWP 3-31.3 (NWP 3-59.3) Surf Zone Operations
- MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
- MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Graphics
- MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious
Forces

Ordnance:

L311	SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew
L312	SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-5139 Participate in Amphibious Assault

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,3

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The AA platoon has been ordered to conduct an amphibious assault from amphibious shipping. The AA platoon is supporting infantry company with inland objectives.

Standard:

The AA platoon conducts waterborne ship-to-shore movement with an embarked infantry unit and supports subsequent infantry offensive operations ashore.

Component Events:

- Execute Landing Plan from preparation phase through launch from amphibious shipping.
- Conduct waterborne ship-to-shore movement.
- Assault designated objective in accordance with Landing Plan.
- Conduct mechanized operations ashore in order to seize immediate objectives of assault landing.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5135 - Prepare AA Platoon for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping
- 18X3-AMPH-3136 - Perform AAV Crew Water Operation Qualification
- 18X3-AMPH-5137 - Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement
- 18X3-OFF -5771 - Support Infantry Offensive Operations
- 18X3-VEH -3853 - Operate AAV on Land

Related ITS:

- 1833-AULC-2017 - Perform Duties of Wave Commander
- 18X3-AULC-2025 - Navigate in an AAV
- 1833-AULC-2016 - Develop Surf Observation (SUROB) Report
- 1833-AULC-2069 - Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAV
- 18X3-AULC-2028 - Control Radio Communications

References:

- LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
- MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
- MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
- JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
- JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

MCRP 3-31.3A Over-the-Horizon Surface Amphibious Operations
MCWP 3-31.5 (FMFM 1-8) Ship-To-Shore Movement
MCWP 3-31.1 (FMFM 1-7) Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
MCWP 3-31.3 (NWP 3-59.3) Surf Zone Operations
MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action
MCO 3500.27 Operational Risk Management
TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle,
Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious
Forces

Ordnance:

L311	SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew
L312	SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-5140 Participate in Amphibious Raid

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,3

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The AA platoon is embarked on amphibious shipping. The unit has been ordered to conduct an amphibious raid in support of the supported unit.

Standard:

The AA platoon conducts waterborne ship-to-shore movement with an embarked infantry unit, supports subsequent infantry offensive operations ashore, and conducts a planned withdrawal to amphibious shipping.

Component Events:

- Execute Landing Plan from preparation phase through launch from amphibious shipping.
- Conduct waterborne ship-to-shore movement.
- Conduct mechanized operations ashore in support of the objective of raid force.
- Conduct planned withdrawal of raid force.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5135 - Prepare AA Platoon for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping
- 18X3-AMPH-3136 - Operate AAV in the Water
- 18X3-AMPH-5137 - Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement
- 18X3-AMPH-5141 - Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal
- 18X3-OFF -5771 - Support Infantry Offensive Operations
- 18X3-OFF -5767 - Conduct Actions on Contact
- 18X3-VEH -3853 - Operate AAV on Land
- 18X3-DEF -5411 - Employ Operational Security
- 18X3-DEF -3409 - Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions

Related ITS:

- 18X3-AULC-2025 - Navigate in an AAV
- 1833-AULC-2016 - Develop Surf Observation (SUROB) Report
- 1833-AULC-2013 - Coordinate Embarkation Plans on Amphibious Shipping with Naval Personnel
- 1833-AULC-2069 - Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAV

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

References:

LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
FMFM 4-3 MAGTF Landing Support Operations
MCRP 3-31.3A Over-the-Horizon Surface Amphibious Operations
MCWP 3-31.5 (FMFM 1-8) Ship-To-Shore Movement
MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
MCRP 4-11.3D (FMFM 4-2) The Naval Beach Group
FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
MCO 3500.27 Operational Risk Management
MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Graphics

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

Ordnance:

L311	SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew
L312	SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE	1 per crew

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-5141 Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,3

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The AA platoon has been ordered to conduct an amphibious withdrawal. The withdrawal is anticipated to be conducted under strong enemy pressure. The operations orders have been issued.

Standard:

The AA platoon establishes a hasty defense, embarks supported infantry, and provides continuous security until all AAVs and embarked personnel retrograde to amphibious shipping.

Component Events:

- Emphasize security as focus of effort as well as the accountability of personnel and equipment.
- Coordinate with covering force.
- Develop movement plan for elements. Plan should minimize traffic congestion and delay at embarkation points.
- Develop logistics/resupply plan that provides for as much self sufficiency as possible to allow CSS assets to load first.
- Plan for evacuation of casualties, personnel, and vehicles.
- Conduct pre-water operation checks.
- Complete withdrawal to amphibious shipping with minimal loss of personnel and equipment.

Related CTS:

18X3-AMPH-3136 - Operate AAV in the Water

18X3-DEF -3409 - Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2028 - Control Radio Communications

1833-AULC-2069 - Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAV

1833-AULC-2013 - Coordinate Embarkation/Debarcation Plans from Amphibious Shipping with Naval Personnel

1833-AULC-2016 - Develop Surf Observation (SUROB) Report

References:

MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book

MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations

JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations

MCWP 3-31.2 (MCRP 3-3.1 NWP 3-15) Mine Warfare

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

MCRP 3-31.3A Over-the-Horizon Surface Amphibious Operations
MCWP 3-31.5 (FMFM 1-8) Ship-To-Shore Movement
MCWP 3-31.3 (NWP 3-59.3) Surf Zone Operations
MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
MCRP 4-11.3D (FMFM 4-2) The Naval Beach Group
FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-6104 Conduct Surf Survival Training

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

Given training area, requirement to conduct surf survival training, MCIWS swimmers and safety craft.

Standard:

Accomplish each component event with endstate of no safety incidents.

Component Events:

- Plan the training, considering:
 - a. Number of troops to be trained.
 - b. Number of MCIWS swimmers available to act as safety swimmers.
 - c. Time of year and normal water temperatures and tidal conditions experienced.
 - d. Time required to brief, transport, and recover the unit to be trained.
- Coordinate with AA battalion S-3 and supported unit.
- Establish teams of ten swimmers to be embarked onto the escort AAVs.
 - a. Weak swimmers will be paired with strong swimmers.
 - b. Weak swimmers will be easily identifiable with white t-shirts or suitable markings.
 - c. Verify that rosters/manifest lists are generated for each boat team and are left with the OIC of the exercise ashore during each cycle.
- Establish safety craft in the water other than the escort AAVs (rafts, small boats) to pick up weak or injured swimmers during the transit:
 - a. The MCIWS swimmers will be posted on the safety craft with proper water rescue devices.
 - b. Corpsmen with backboards and resuscitation equipment will be posted on each safety craft.
- Units receive safety brief on surf survival training to include:
 - a. Correct use of the life jacket.
 - b. Actions in the event of a disabled AAV.
 - c. Actions in the event of a sinking AAV.
 - d. How to exit the AAV.
 - e. How to enter the water.
 - f. The importance of the buddy system.
 - g. Basic swimming strokes.
 - h. Pair weak swimmers with strong swimmers.
 - i. Actions in the event of injury or fatigue during the exercise.
- Conduct surf observation report prior to commencement of training.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

- Transmit surf report to AAV Battalion S-3, prior to commencement of water operations.
- Verify that water escort AAVs are positioned so that they do not drift into swimmers as they swim through the surf zone and to the beach.
- Monitor and observe all phases of the training, being especially watchful for potential safety threats to personnel and equipment.

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2016 - Develop Surf Observation (SUROB) Report
18X3-CORE-1010 - Complete Individual Surf Qualification

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
MCO 1500.52B Marine Corps Combat Water Survival Training
MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Equipment: Lifejackets

Miscellaneous:

Admin Instructions:

1. Participating Marines need to be qualified as CWS-2 swimmers prior to training.
2. No more than ten swimmers in the water for every one MCIWS trained escort swimmer.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-7133 Assist in Developing the Landing Plan

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,3

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The AA battalion is in receipt of the MAGTF concept of operations and has an approved plan of attack. The landing can occur during the day, at night, or during periods of limited visibility.

Standard:

The AA battalion provides accurate landing plan information and documents that support the Landing Force scheme of maneuver, and that facilitate troop and equipment embarkation and debarkation.

Component Events:

- Conduct Mission Analysis of supported unit's operations order.
- Determine Assault Amphibian lift requirements for assault elements, scheduled waves, on-call waves, and nonscheduled waves.
- Review Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the number and periods of availability for each type of AAV assigned to the operation.
- Determine landing force lift requirements for the ship-to-shore movement in coordination with a review of the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table, Helicopter Availability Table, and the Landing Craft Availability Table.
- Consider enemy capabilities to counter surface and/or air assaults.
- Allow flexibility of on-call and nonscheduled waves.
- Assign elements to one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
- Allocate assets for use by subordinate elements, and ensure that the proposed Landing Diagram, Assault Schedule, and Landing Sequence Table are developed concurrently and are mutually compatible.
- Develop Serial Assignment Table based on task organization for the landing.
- Develop Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table is coordinated with affected units.
- Develop Helicopter Employment and Assault Landing Table as well as Heliteam Wave and Serial Assignment Table are coordinated with ACE and appropriate CE.
- Provide input for Approach Schedule.
- Develop Debarkation Schedule in coordination with Naval personnel.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Related ITS:

1803-AAOC-1029 - Perform Duties as Special Staff Officer
1833-AULC-2018 - Assist in Developing the Landing Plan

References:

LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
MCWP 3-31.5 (FMFM 1-8) Ship-To-Shore Movement
MCWP 3-31.3 (NWP 3-59.3) Surf Zone Operations
MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
MCRP 4-11.3D (FMFM 4-2) The Naval Beach Group
MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-7134 Analyze Landing Plan

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,3

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The AA battalion is in receipt of the MAGTF concept of operations and has an approved plan of attack. The landing can occur during the day, at night, or during periods of limited visibility.

Standard:

The AA battalion inspects each applicable landing plan document, determines Amphibious Vehicle Employment Plan, and provides Landing Force staff with critical information to facilitate Landing Plan operations.

Component Events:

- Reconcile the Landing Plan with the scheme of maneuver ashore.
- Examine the Landing Plan Diagram and extract the AAV-borne scheduled waves of the assault.
- Examine the Approach Schedule and extract the wave schedules.
- Analyze the Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Schedule and verify the boat team assignments.
- Analyze the Serial Assignment Table to determine the group of troop units to be landed on a specified beach at the same time.
- Analyze the Landing Sequence Table to determine the priority of landing of nonscheduled serials.
- Analyze the Assault Schedule to determine the composition and timing of waves landing over designated beaches.
- Analyze the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the type, number and ship location of amphibious vehicles which are available to the landing force.
- Provide the Landing Force and Amphibious Task Force staff members with input for the Amphibious Vehicle Employment Plan.

Related CTS:

18X3-AMPH-7133 - Assist in Developing the Landing Plan

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2018 - Assist in Developing the Landing Plan

References:

LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
MCWP 3-17.3 (FMFM 13-7) MAGTF Breaching Operations
FMFM 4-3 MAGTF Landing Support Operations
FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
MCWP 3-31.2 (MCRP 3-3.1 NWP 3-15) Mine Warfare
MCRP 3-31.3A Over-the-Horizon Surface Amphibious Operations
MCWP 3-31.5 (FMFM 1-8) Ship-To-Shore Movement
MCWP 3-31.1 (FMFM 1-7) Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
MCWP 3-31.3 (NWP 3-59.3) Surf Zone Operations
MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
MCRP 4-11.3D (FMFM 4-2) The Naval Beach Group
MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations
MCRP 4-11.4A (FMFRP 4-34) Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair
FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action
MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Graphics

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CMND-3242 Control Radio Communications

Evaluation Coded: Supported MET(s): 4,5

Sustainment Interval: 3 Months

Condition:

Given an operations order and net control of all communications.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references.

Component Events:

- All elements have the authorized SC frequency, frequency hopping (FH) data and COMSEC instructions input into their radios.
- Perform NCS duties and open the net.
- Update FH data using electronic remote fill (ERF) as needed.
- Conduct late net entry as needed.
- Enforce standard radio procedures.
- Coordinate with supported unit or supported unit communications officer for call signs and frequencies.
- Distribute daily call signs and frequencies to all stations on net.
- Establish self as net control, authorizing stations to become operational on net using AAV unit organic communications equipment.
- Enforce listening silence.
- Recognize electronic countermeasures (ECM) and implement electronic counter countermeasures (ECCM) under the guidance of the communications officer.

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1022 - Communicate Using AAV Communications Equipment

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

MCRP 6-22C Radio Operator's Handbook

MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CMND-4202 Conduct Command Section Operations

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 3, 4, and 5

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a mission to support Battalion staff.

Standard:

Provide uninterrupted mobility and communication support during offensive and defensive operations.

Component Events:

- Chase vehicle provides Command Section security.
- Assist in establishing mobile COC.
- Assist supported unit staff and commander to task organize AAVC7A1 and chase vehicle.
- Employ medium machine gun.
- Assist supported unit staff and commander to communicate with AAVC7A1 communication equipment.

Related CTS:

18X3-VEH -3853 - Operate AAV on Land

18X3-DEF -3410 - Install a Wire Communications Hot Loop

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-2086 - Perform Installation/Removal of Medium Machine Gun on AAVC7A1

18X3-CORE-2087 - Communicate Using AAV Communication Equipment

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CMND-7206 Maintain a Ground Safety Program

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 4

Sustainment Interval: 3 Months

Description:

The AA unit maintains and publishes ground safety requirements and guidelines to reduce mishaps and accidents.

Condition:

The unit is preparing to conduct daily and tactical operations.

Standard:

The AA battalion provides comprehensive guidance and detail for the battalion and companies to create and follow ground safety program to avoid injury without hindering mission accomplishment in accordance with applicable ground safety orders.

Component Events:

- Identify requirements for safety related programs.
- Develop a ground safety plan.
- Identify potential hazards.
- Identify techniques employed to prevent mishaps.
- Identify responsibilities of the safety manager to prevent mishaps.
- Direct safety training of personnel to prevent mishaps.
- Identify the requirements to report and record mishaps.
- Monitor safety procedures at the commodity level.

Related ITS:

1803-MOJT-2005 - Maintain a Ground Safety Program

18X3-CORE-1012 - Perform AA Unit Operational Safety Procedures

References:

MCO 3500.27 Operational Risk Management

MCO P5090.2 Environmental Compliance and Protection Manual

CFR 29 Labor (OSHA)

MCO 5100.8 Marine Corps Ground Occupational Safety and Health (OSH) Program

MCO 5100.19 Marine Corps Traffic Safety Program (DRIVE SAFE)

TM 10209-10/1 Use and Care of Hand Tools & Measuring Tools

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CMND-7214 Develop Operations Order

Evaluation Coded: Supported MET(s): 3, 4

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit has received and analyzed higher headquarters' operations order.

Standard:

The AA battalion staff develops the battalion operation order utilizing the Marine Corps Planning Process.

Component Events:

- Develop Scheme of Maneuver.
- Develop Scheme of Fire Support.
- Develop Scheme of Mobility/Counter mobility/Survivability.
- Develop Scheme of Logistical Support.
- Develop Scheme of Communications Support.

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCWP 4-11 (FMFM 4) Combat Service Support Operations
MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Graphics
MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CMND-7217 Conduct Marine Corps Planning Process

Evaluation Coded: Supported MET(s): 4

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

Given an AA battalion, a supported unit, an operations order, a specified threat, and the references.

Standard:

The AA battalion publishes the operation order after analyzing the mission, providing estimates of supportability, developing the battalion operation order, and task organizing the unit accordingly.

Component Events:

- Conduct Mission Analysis.
- Develop Courses of Action.
- War Game Courses of Action.
- Determine Course of Action.
- Develop appropriate Staff products, Operations Plans, Orders, Annexes, and Appendices.
- Publish the order.

Related CTS:

18X3-CMND-7214 - Develop Operations Order

18X3-CMND-7224 - Conduct Counterintelligence Effort

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2063 - Conduct Terrain Analysis

References:

MCO 3120.8A Organization of FMF for Combat

MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CMND-7219 Develop Scheme of Intelligence Support

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 4

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is in receipt of a warning order to prepare to participate in tactical operations as part of a MAGTF.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references. Assist in developing the scheme of intelligence support as required for amphibious, mechanized, and riverine operations.

Component Events:

- Conduct terrain analysis.
- Conduct analysis of weather.
- Conduct threat analysis.
- Develop Modified Combined Operations Overlay (MCOO).
- Determine AA unit informational requirements.
- Establish reporting procedures.

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2063 - Conduct Terrain Analysis

References:

MCWP 2-14 Counterintelligence
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCDP 2 Intelligence
MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
MCRP 2-15.3B Reconnaissance Reports Guide
FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
MCWP 4-11 (FMFM 4) Combat Service Support Operations
MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Graphics
MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CMND-7238 Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 4

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is conducting tactical operations. Planned combat operations and the enemy situation cause the unit to displace the command post frequently as well as to operate for a period of time out of the AAVC7A1 and/or HMMWVs.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference. Displace the command post as required in order to establish the combat operations center to exercise command and control of the battalion.

Component Events:

- Organize Combat Operation Center.
- Establish COC staffing with executive or primary staff, special staff, liaison personnel, and supporting personnel.
- Organize personnel, equipment, and vehicles for 24 hour/all weather operations.
- Determine location based on defensible position with good communications aspects.
- Identify alternate COC site and route in the event that the COC must displace quickly.
- Prepare plans for the establishment of alternate COC.
- Ensure strict OPSEC/COMSEC during displacement.
- Employ active and passive security measures.
- Establish traffic control measures to limit access and movement in the vicinity of the COC.
- Establish remote antenna farm.
- Establish unit journal.
- Establish message handling procedures within the COC.
- Establish and maintain unit status board.
- Coordinate with Logistics Operation Center.

Related CTS:

18X3-CSS -7330 - Occupy Assembly Area

18X3-CSS -7217 - Conduct Marine Corps Planning Process

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Support Requirements:

Equipment: Command post tents, general purpose tents, tables, chairs, map boards, and radio support

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CMND-7244 Conduct Passive Electronic Countermeasures

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 4,5

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is conducting tactical operations. The enemy has Electronic Counter Measures (ECM) and Electronic Surveillance Measures (ESM) capabilities which he has actively employed.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references.

Component Events:

- Minimize electronic communications.
- Employ wire communications whenever possible.
- Employ encryption methods whenever possible.
- Notify net control of detection of enemy use of friendly frequencies or procedures.
- Employ countermeasures when enemy jamming occurs.
- Employ countermeasure on the SINGARS radios

Related CTS:

18X3-CMND-3242 - Control Radio Communications

References:

MCWP 6-22 Communications And Information Systems

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CMND-7245 Operate Without Communications

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,4

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit loses all radio communications while performing the mission during high tempo operations for a period of 2-4 hours.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references. Complete an operation of significant duration, without radio communications while completing mission requirements.

Component Events:

- Establish "no communications plan" as part of OPORD/FRAGO.
- Employ alternate control methods in the absence of radio communications.
- Continue mission in accordance with commander's intent maintaining focus on the desired end state.

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
FM 21-60 Visual Signals
MCDP 6 Command and Control

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-3355 Refuel an AAV

Evaluation Coded: Supported MET(s): 6

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The AA unit has AAVs that require refueling. Refueling source is available.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Conduct service station refueling.
- Conduct tailgate refueling.
- All local safety requirements are observed at the refueling point.
- The vehicle is ground guided from the fuel source and prepared for further service.

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1012 - Perform AAV Operational Safety Procedures

References:

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-5364 Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2,6

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit or supported units are inflicted with personnel casualties.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references. Plan, rehearse, and conduct an evacuation of casualties.

Component Events:

- Local personnel stabilize and prioritize casualties.
- Transfer of the casualties by combat or log trains is coordinated at designated collection points.
- Casualties are evacuated under supervision of a corpsman to collection points.
- Local unit provides security for casualty movement and evacuation based on threat analysis.
- Local unit guides helicopters or vehicles into collection point and supervises transfer.

Related CTS:

18X3-VEH -3854 - Evacuate Wounded Crewmember from each Crew Station

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1030 - Coordinate Casualty Evacuation (CASEVAC) in an AAVP7A1

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

MCWP 4-11 (FMFM 4) Combat Service Support Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-6361 Conduct Combat Train Employment

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 6

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is conducting ongoing CSS operations. Subordinate AA units are supporting other units.

Standard:

Task organize the AA company into a functional combat train to provide maintenance and logistics support to subordinate AA platoons during extended operations.

Component Events:

- Determine the CSS requirements for combat train units.
- Task organize the combat trains based on the requirements and threat analysis.
- Control movement of the combat trains on the battlefield in conjunction with the supported unit's S-3 section.
- Perform command and control functions as necessary.
- Conduct combat reporting as required.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-CSS -7335 - Plan Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations
- 18X3-CSS -7336 - Conduct Resupply Operations
- 18X3-CSS -3355 - Refuel an AAV
- 18X3-CSS -3364 - Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations

References:

- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
- MCDP 4 Logistics
- MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
- MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
- MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
- MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations
- MCWP 4-11 (FMFM 4) Combat Service Support Operations
- MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action
- TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-7330 Occupy Assembly Area

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2,4

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is preparing to occupy an assembly area.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references. Conduct quartering party and local security operations, and establish the COC for follow-on operations.

Component Events:

- Issue order to quartering party and dispatch them to conduct reconnaissance and preparation of proposed assembly area.
- Conduct movement of unit to Assembly Area (AA) in coordination with quartering party.
- Establish priority of work.
- Establish AA perimeter, maintaining lateral contact between vehicles within the AA and adjoining units.
- Establish vehicle and individual positions, maintaining mutual support between vehicles, individuals and elements.
- Establish camouflage within 45 minutes of occupation of the assembly area.
- Establish wire communications.
- Establish range cards and element fire plan sketches.
- Establish chemical agent alarms.
- Supervise the conduct of required CSS activities.
- Conduct planning for subsequent operations.
- Maintain light and noise discipline.

Related CTS:

18X3-CSS -7331 - Conduct Quartering Party Operations

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCDP 4 Logistics
MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations
MCWP 4-11 (FMFM 4) Combat Service Support Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-7331 Conduct Quartering Party Operations

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2,4

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a route and general vicinity of assembly area.

Standard:

Prior to the arrival of the main body recon; establish, and mark the route, obstacles, and layout of the new assembly area during day and night operations.

Component Events:

- Issue Warning Order to Quartering party personnel.
- Coordinate with unit S-3 and S-4 for details on the location and requirements for the Battalion Support Area, personnel and equipment for the Quartering Party, and fire support to cover the movement to and from the survey of the site.
- Task organize Quartering Party.
- Plan and conduct tactical road march from current location to planned site.
- Establish security element and conduct patrol of area to determine level of enemy activity in the immediate area.
- Conduct site survey.

Related CTS:

18X3-CSS -7332 - Conduct Local Security of the Assembly Area

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

MCWP 4-11 (FMFM 4) Combat Service Support Operations

MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action

Miscellaneous:

Equipment Operating Hours: 4 minutes per mile traveled per vehicle (15 mph rate of march)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-7332 Conduct Local Security of the Assembly Area

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2,4

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is conducting tactical operations. Enemy forces are deployed in the vicinity. The enemy has a night observation capability. The AA Battalion has mechanized, motorized, and foot-mobile security capability.

Standard:

Establish and conduct security operations for the assembly area, to include sentries, and other appropriate force protection measures.

Component Events:

- Analyze patrol order from higher.
- Coordinate with Camp Commandant.
- Task organize patrol based on estimate of the situation (METT-TSL).
- Issue warning order to patrol group.
- Conduct equipment checks prior to departing friendly lines.
- Coordinate with actual element for passage of lines for departure and return.
- Issue OPORD to patrol and conduct rehearsals.
- Conduct patrols.
- Debrief patrols.

References:

MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
MCWP 3-41.1 (FMFM 2-6) Rear Area Operations
MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Graphics
MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-7334 Conduct Logistic Operations Center Operations (LOC)

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 6

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is conducting tactical operations. Enemy forces are deployed in the vicinity. The enemy has a night observation capability.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references. Displace the command post to establish the logistics operations center to provide logistics and maintenance support for the battalion and subordinate units.

Component Events:

- Determine location based on defensible position with good communication aspects.
- Organize Logistics Operation Center (LOC).
- Establish LOC staffing with executive or primary staff, special staff, liaison personnel, and supporting personnel.
- Organize personnel, equipment, and vehicles for 24 hour/all weather operations.
- Rehearse movement to alternate LOC site and route in the event that the LOC must displace quickly.
- Review plans for the establishment of alternate LOC per unit SOP.
- Maintain strict OPSEC/COMSEC during displacement.
- Employ active and passive security measures.
- Enforce traffic control measures to limit access and movement in the vicinity of the LOC.
- Maintain remote antenna farm.
- Maintain unit journal.
- Enforce message handling procedures within the LOC.
- Maintain unit status board.
- Coordinate Combat Service Support Operations.
- Coordinate with Combat Operation Center.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-CSS -7335 - Plan Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations
- 18X3-CSS -7360 - Conduct Logistics Trains
- 18X3-CSS -7362 - Conduct Contact and Recovery Team Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

MCDP 4 Logistics

MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations

MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations

MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations

MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations

MCWP 4-11 (FMFM 4) Combat Service Support Operations

MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action

Miscellaneous:

Equipment Operating Hours: 24 hours operation of generator or AAVC7A1 per day.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-7335 Plan Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations

Evaluation Coded: Supported MET(s): 6

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit must conduct extended tactical operations. Subordinate units may be supporting other units.

Standard:

The AA battalion plans logistics and maintenance support for the battalion and subordinate units for an operation by analyzing the mission, providing estimates of supportability, and developing the battalion operation order.

Component Events:

- Develop scheme of support by phase for the operation.
- In coordination with the operations officer, establish control measures for each of the following Combat Service Support functions for each phase, including options for NBC "clean"/not contaminated and "dirty"/contaminated situations.
- Establish vehicle recovery teams.
- Establish maintenance contact teams.
- Establish resupply convoys and their escorts.
- Establish NBC decontamination teams and locations.
- Conduct resupply operations from logistics trains.
- Operate Unit Maintenance Collection Points (UMCP).
- Direct recovery, repair, and return of vehicles to units.
- Direct medical activities.
- Process Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs).
- Coordinate Morale, Welfare, and Recreation support.

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCDP 4 Logistics
MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations
MCWP 4-11 (FMFM 4) Combat Service Support Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-7336 Conduct Resupply Operations

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 6

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is static and conducting operations apart from the logistics train of their higher headquarters. The unit must conduct resupply as a result of the operations or for sustainment.

Standard:

Execute the combat service support plan by providing maintenance and logistics support to the battalion and subordinate units resulting in seamless operations.

Component Events:

- Plan and conduct local security.
- Plan and execute a method of resupply (tail gate or service station).
- Determine and direct priorities of resupply by unit, element, and item supplied.
- Conduct resupply operations without compromising local security or detection by the enemy.
- Enforce all safety precautions.

Related CTS:

18X3-CSS -7335 - Plan Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations
MCWP 4-11 (FMFM 4) Combat Service Support Operations
TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-7348 Support Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPF)
Operations During Planning and Execution

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 3

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The unit is ordered to support MPF operations.

Standard:

Plan and execute the AA battalion personnel and equipment support required during the 5 phases of MPF operations in support of a MAGTF.

Component Events:

- Participate in MPF planning.
- Participate in unit marshalling and movement operations.
- Participate in arrival and assembly operations.
- Participate in regeneration operations.

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle,
Model 7A1, AAVP7A1
FMFM 1-5 MPF Command and Control
NWP 22-10 MPF Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-7349 Develop Plans to Embark AA Unit

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 3

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The unit is in receipt of a warning order to prepare to deploy as part of a MAGTF.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references. Collect, analyze, organize, and distribute required data and requirements for the embarkation of the AA unit.

Component Events:

- Establish liaison with the Ground Combat Element (GCE) Embarkation Officer or the Team Embarkation Officer (TEO).
- Determine logistical requirements for AA unit in order to support the operations plan and order.
- Review special requirements for AA unit based on the type of transportation selected for each movement phase.
- Prepare written plans and appropriate electronic embarkation data.
- Submit plans and requirements to higher headquarters.
- Submit list of materials required to complete embarkation preparation.
- Determine personnel to conduct embarkation and identify any training shortfalls.

Related ITS:

1833-MOJT-2039 - Coordinate AA Unit Operation/Deployment Embarkation

References:

LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCDP 4 Logistics
MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
MCRP 4-13.1A (FMFM 4-6) Movement of Units in Air Force Aircraft
TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1
FM 55-9 Unit Air Movement Planning
MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-7351 Embark AAVs Onto Strategic Transportation

Evaluation Coded: Supported MET(s): 6

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The unit is required to transport AAVs.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references.

Component Events:

- Supervise coordination with the Departure Airfield Control Group (DACG) and with the Air Force command and control ground personnel.
- Establish liaison with higher headquarters and staffs as required.
- Embarkation Officer is provided with list of vehicles and equipment to be embarked. Include a detailed listing of any ammunition, pyrotechnics, POL, hazardous materials or items requiring to be secured (communications equipment or weapons) to be embarked.
- Prepare personnel, vehicles, and equipment for embarkation in accordance with instructions from the ships personnel and special regulations governing the materials to be embarked.
- Move personnel, vehicles, equipment, and materials to embarkation points.
- Embark vehicles in accordance with embarkation plan and guidance from embarkation personnel.
- Manifest all personnel, vehicles, cargo, and equipment and give a copy of the manifest to the embarkation personnel.

Related CTS:

18X3-CSS -7349 - Develop Plans to Embark AA Unit

Related ITS:

1833-MOJT-2039 - Coordinate AA Unit Operation/Deployment Embarkation

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

MCDP 4 Logistics

MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action

Support Requirements:

Other Units/Personnel: Airlift (AAV lift capable), sealift (AAV lift capable), land transportation support

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-7360 Conduct Logistics Trains

Evaluation Coded: Supported MET(s): 6

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is conducting ongoing logistics operations. Subordinate units are supporting other units.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references. Sustain the AA battalion with mobile maintenance and logistics support during extended operations.

Component Events:

- Determine the CSS requirements for recovery and repair; equipment evacuation; supply; and EPW processing operations.
- Organize the trains based on the requirements and the threat analysis.
- Control movement of the trains on the battlefield in conjunction with the S-3 section.
- Perform command and control functions.
- Conduct LOGPAC.
- Conduct mail pick-up and delivery and delivery of personnel replacements.
- Conduct combat reporting.

Related CTS:

18X3-CSS-3355 - Refuel an AAV

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCDP 4 Logistics
MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations
MCWP 4-11 (FMFM 4) Combat Service Support Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CSS-7362 Conduct Contact and Recovery Team Operations

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 6

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is conducting ongoing CSS operations. Subordinate AA units are supporting other units.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references.

Component Events:

- Determine maintenance, diagnostic, and supervisory needs of unit.
- Task organize contact/recovery team.
- Contact/recovery team has mobility and security based on threat analysis.
- Contact/recovery team has references, special allowance tools, and diagnostic equipment suitable for anticipated operations.
- Coordinate with local friendly unit for passage of lines, for both leaving and returning.
- Coordinate with local friendly unit for fire support during movement.
- Coordinate for frequencies, call signs, recognition signals, and authentication procedures with local friendly unit and unit requesting support.
- Conduct combat reporting.

References:

MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
MCWP 4-11 (FMFM 4) Combat Service Support Operations
MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations
MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action
TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-DEF-3409 Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is ordered to move from a defensive position to another position that accomplishes the same or different mission.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references.

Component Events:

- Establish alternate/supplementary positions to include range card and fire sketch, marking the position for use in day or night, and rehearsing movement to the position.
- Displace to alternate/supplementary positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1042 - Prepare AAV Range Card

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-DEF-5401 Support Infantry Defensive Operations

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2,3,5,7

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is ordered to support defensive operations as part of a larger force.

Standard:

Complete all event components in support of infantry defensive operations with an end-state of an AAV unit integrated into the larger unit's defensive scheme of maneuver.

Component Events:

- In accordance with the references and the supported unit's OPORD/FRAGO, conduct a delay, defense in sector, defense of a BP, defense of a strongpoint, reserve, counterattack, or disengagement.
- Employ obstacles (natural and man made) to disrupt, delay, block, or canalize enemy movement in coordination with fire support to destroy his reconnaissance elements and defeat his main attack.
- Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire sketch. At a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
- Employ vehicle weapons to engage enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
- Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
- Conduct local counterattacks.
- Conduct combat reporting.
- Conduct consolidation and reorganization.
- Conduct resupply, recovery, and evacuation operations.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-DEF -3408 - Prepare AAV Fighting Positions
- 18X3-DEF -3409 - Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions
- 18X3-DEF -3410 - Install a Wire Communications Hot Loop
- 18X3-DEF -3411 - Employ Operational Security

Related ITS:

- 18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver
- 18X3-AULC-2025 - Navigate in an AAV
- 1833-AULC-2069 - Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAV
- 1833-AULC-2038 - Coordinate AA Unit in Preparations for Combat

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

- 1833-AULC-2045 - Assign Unit Sectors of Fire
- 1833-AULC-2046 - Prepare AA Unit Fire Plan Sketch
- 1833-AULC-2047 - Coordinate AA Unit Fire Plan Sketch with Supported Unit Commander
- 18X3-AULC-2028 - Control Radio Communications

References:

- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
- TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-DEF-5408 Prepare AAV Fighting Positions

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The unit is in the defense or in a halted position. The enemy has a night observation capability and is capable of employing direct and indirect detection means.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references.

Component Events:

- Enforce light and noise discipline.
- Coordinate the fire sketch.
- Establish vehicle position within perimeter.
- Identify alternate and supplementary positions in accordance with guidance from element commander.
- Mark primary positions for use in day and night. Positions must be marked so that vehicle can depart to conduct rehearsals and maintenance and return to the same position in order to use the same range card.
- Rehearse movement to alternate and supplementary positions, marking both for use in day and night conditions and producing range cards for each position.
- Camouflage primary position. Make maximum use of natural resources, employing camouflage net, as necessary.
- Install wire communications between vehicles as directed. Wire should run left to right, higher to lower. Bury all wires to avoid getting them caught in the suspension when vehicles move.

Related ITS:

- 1833-AULC-2063 - Conduct Terrain Analysis
- 18X3-CORE-1042 - Prepare AAV Range Card
- 1833-AULC-2045 - Assign Unit Sectors of Fire
- 1833-AULC-2046 - Prepare AA Unit Fire Plan Sketch
- 1833-AULC-2047 - Coordinate AA Unit Fire Plan Sketch with Supported Unit Commander
- 18X3-CORE-1040 - Coordinate the Installation of a Wire Communications Hot Loop
- 18X3-CORE-1091 - Employ Upgunned Weapon Station

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle,
Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-DEF-5411 Employ Operational Security

Evaluation Coded: Supported MET(s): 2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is deployed in hostile area of operations.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references. The AAV section defensive position is not observed nor detected.

Component Events:

- Employ deception measures as directed by higher headquarters.
- Employ wire communications to the fullest extent possible.
- Identify potential friendly vulnerabilities to enemy intelligence operations.
- Develop security and deception measures to limit vulnerabilities.
- Develop counter reconnaissance effort to defeat enemy intelligence activities and establish security elements and patrols.
- Develop and enforce passive measures to defeat enemy intelligence activities.
- Conduct movement, CSS operations, and rehearsals during limited visibility as much as possible.
- Limit movement in, around, and between positions as much as possible.
- Employ remote transmission sites as appropriate.
- Develop electronic countermeasures to include alternate frequencies, authentication procedures, and anti-jamming procedures.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2028 - Control Radio Communications

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-DEF-7471 Conduct Hasty Decontamination for AA Unit in NBC Environment

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,3,4,5,6,7, and 8.

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The unit is in MOPP 4 and equipment has been contaminated. Power driven decontamination equipment is available.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references.

Component Events:

- Coordinate selection of hasty decontamination site with higher headquarters.
- Prepare hasty decontamination site.
- Operate hasty decontamination site.
- Personnel remove gross contamination from individual protective over garments, combat gear, and weapons with sticks or other improvised devices.
- Personnel decontaminate individual protective gloves, hood, overbooks, combat gear, and weapon.
- Decontaminated weapons are washed with water, dried, and lubricated.
- Contaminated protective covers covering essential equipment are removed, decontaminated, or disposed.
- Assigned operators/crew members decontaminate their vehicles and/or crew served weapons.
- Reduce MOPP if decontamination efforts are adequate as determined by radiation detector kits.
- Close and mark hasty decontamination site.

References:

MCWP 3-37.7 NBC Decontamination

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MCM-3506 Employ MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 8

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The support force is in position. The unit has been ordered to operate the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System in support of the breach.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Crew removes MK 154 Launcher.
- Crew performs Preventative Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System.
- Crew installs MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
- Crew conducts operational checks of MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System.
- Crew loads line charges on MK 154 Launcher.
- Crew operates MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System.
- Crew conducts immediate actions for failure of the rocket motor to deploy.
- Crew conducts immediate actions for failure of the line charge to detonate.
- Crew unloads line charges from MK 154 Launcher.
- Crew dismounts MK 22 Rocket Motors, MOD 4 from MK 154 Launcher.

Related ITS:

1833-MTT-2050 - Conduct Operation and Maintenance of the MK 154 Mine Clearance System

References:

TM 09962A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Launcher, Mine Clearance Kit, Mark 1, MOD 0

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: Demolition Range

Ordnance: J143 5-INCH MK22 ROCKET MOD 4 3 per crew

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MCM-5585 Breach Obstacle

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 8

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is performing tactical operations when it is stopped by an obstacle that it cannot bypass. The unit is operating as part of a larger force. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire available.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references.

Component Events:

- Detonate the linear charge electrically from within the AAV
- In the event of a misfire or an inability to electrically detonate the linear charge from within the AAV, manually detonate the linear charge
- Once suppression and obscuration is employed, conduct tactical movement of the mine countermeasure (MCM) section to the breach site.
- Employ the MK 154 Mine Clearance System, deploy the linear charge into the obstacle/minfield.
- Repeat as necessary to provide explosive breaching through the obstacle/minfield.
- Mark the lane in conjunction with the combat engineers and the supported force's breach plan.
- Re-arm and Re-fit as necessary in accordance with the supported force's offensive maneuver plan.

Related CTS:

18X3-MCM-3506 - Operate MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

Related ITS:

1833-MTT-2058 - Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of MK 154 Mine Clearance System

1833-MTT-2059 - Coordinate Mine Countermeasures Operations with Supported Unit

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data

MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports

MCWP 3-17.3 (FMFM 13-7) MAGTF Breaching Operations

TM 09962A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Launcher, Mine Clearance Kit, Mark 1, MOD 0

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations

FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration

Miscellaneous:

Admin Instructions: Valid for rehearsals and live fire - Key component to CAX.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MCM-5589 Participate in Deliberate Breach

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2,8

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is ordered to support a unit participating in a breach of enemy obstacles that cannot be bypassed. Security is provided for the unit.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references.

Component Events:

- Analyze the mission, enemy, troops and fire support available, time, space, and logistics (METT-TSL).
- Identify the type of breaching operation (assault or covert) and the number of lanes required to allow the passage of the Ground Combat Element (GCE) and Combat Service Support Element (CSSE).
- Identify intelligence requirements to the S-2/G-2.
- Identify and evaluate potential breach sites.
- Conduct reconnaissance to the lowest level possible.
- Conduct threat analysis of enemy forces covering the breach site and possible reserves.
- Task organize engineer personnel and equipment within the assault breach force.
- Plan, prioritize, and recommend fire support requirements to support the plan.
- Develop battle drills (individual/unit) to rehearse the breach of a complex obstacle.
- Support force establishes overwatch position.
- Breach force establishes breach site security.
- Breach force conducts breach.
- Assault force moves through breach and destroys enemy forces capable of sealing breach site to include local counterattacks.
- Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
- Hand over control of the breach to follow on forces.

Related CTS:

18X3-MCM-3506 - Operate MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

Related ITS:

1833-MTT-2059 - Coordinate Mine Countermeasures Operations with Supported Unit

1833-AULC-2063 - Conduct Terrain Analysis

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCWP 3-17.3 (FMFM 13-7) MAGTF Breaching Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MCM-5590 Conduct Amphibious Breaching

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2,8

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is ordered to conduct a breach of enemy mines and obstacles on the assault beach.

Standard:

Complete event components in accordance with the TM 09962A-10/1 Operator's Manual, supported force's Breach plan, Landing Plan, and higher headquarters operations order.

Component Events:

- Mark Lane.
- Conduct combat reporting.
- Coordinate breach with Amphibious Task Force and Landing Force, as appropriate.
- Following launch from amphibious shipping, breaching elements move to selected breach site.
- Deploy MK 154 elements in accordance with breach plan.
- First element establishes breach.
- Second element proofs or expands breach, as appropriate.
- Chase vehicles act as proofing vehicles, when appropriate.

Related CTS:

18X3-MCM-5506 - Operate MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

18X3-MCM-5585 - Breach Obstacle

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2025 - Navigate in an AAV

1833-AULC-2016 - Develop Surf Observation (SUROB) Report

1833-AULC-2017 - Perform Duties of Wave Commander

1833-MTT-2050 - Conduct Operation and Maintenance of the MK 154 Mine Clearance System

18X3-AULC-2028 - Control Radio Communications

1833-MTT-2058 - Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of MK 154 Mine Clearance System

References:

MCWP 3-17.3 (FMFM 13-7) MAGTF Breaching Operations

TM 09962A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Launcher, Mine Clearance Kit, Mark 1, MOD 0

MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

Miscellaneous:

Admin Instructions: Can be conducted with non-live fire rehearsals, live fire rehearsal with inert charge, or live fire with charge. Limited training areas available for live fire with charge.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5625 Employ Column Formation

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a designated base unit and a route.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Direct the unit to employ the column (linear or staggered) formation during a tactical road march.
- Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
- Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
- Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
- Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5626 Employ Vee Formation

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a designated base unit and a route.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Direct the unit to employ the vee formation.
- Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
- Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
- Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
- Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5627 Employ Wedge Formation

Evaluation Coded: Supported MET(s): 1,2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a designated base unit and a route.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Direct the unit to employ the wedge formation.
- Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
- Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
- Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
- Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5628 Employ Line Formation

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a designated base unit and a route.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Direct the unit to employ the line formation during a movement.
- Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
- Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
- Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
- Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5629 Employ Echelon Formation

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a designated base unit and a route.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Direct the unit to employ the echelon formation during a movement to contact.
- Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
- Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
- Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
- Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5633 Conduct Tactical Road March

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit has been ordered to conduct a road march with troops and equipment. The unit has conducted preparation.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Develop and issue a FRAGO/OPORD to the unit.
- Initiate unit movement.
- Pass and report start, intermediate check points and release points at stated time, speed, interval, and order of march.
- Maintain weapons orientation, air watch, and mutual support.
- Maintain command and control.
- Unit arrives at the Release Point at the stated time and reports to higher headquarters.
- Conduct tactical halts.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

18X3-AULC-2025 - Navigate in an AAV

1833-AULC-2061 - Conduct Map Reconnaissance

18X3-CORE-1031 - Conduct Preventive and Corrective Maintenance for the AAV7A1 FOV

18X3-AULC-2028 - Control Radio Communications

1833-AULC-2045 - Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

References:

MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5634 Employ Herringbone Formation

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a designated base unit and a route.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Determine a defensible position with adequate cover and concealment along the route of march to halt the unit.
- Direct lead element of unit to halt near the far end of the position and orient on the direction of march.
- Elements of the unit maintain their interval and orient outboard based on their position within the formation according to unit SOP.
- The formation should resemble a staggered column, within the limits of the terrain, with the trace elements oriented toward the rear of the column to ensure complete security.
- Unit resumes the original formation and direction of march.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

1833-AULC-2045 - Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

References:

MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5635 Conduct Tactical Halt

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a designated base unit and a route. The enemy is in vicinity.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Determine a defensible position with adequate cover and concealment to halt the unit.
- Advise point element to halt at the farthest point in the position and establish security.
- Direct the appropriate security formation based on the terrain and threat situation.
- For short halts, dismount two to three embarked troops to cover the AAV crews while they conduct At Halt Operations Checks.
- For long halts dismount the entire embarked unit and deploy them as security for the AAV crews while they conduct At Halt checks.
- Every third or every other vehicle will conduct at halt operations checks, including raising the plenums, while the other vehicles provide security.
- The vehicles will alternate raising their plenums. A vehicle will lower its plenums immediately upon completion of those at halt operations checks under the plenums in order to allow the rest of the unit to conduct their checks.
- Vehicles discovering maintenance concerns will pass them through the chain of command for action by maintenance personnel.
- When all checks are completed, the embarked personnel will return to the vehicles. Accountability of all personnel is essential.
- AAVs resume the march formation and continue with the mission.

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1040 - Conduct Camouflage, Cover, and Concealment of an AA Unit

18X3-CORE-1091 - Employ Upgunned Weapon Station

18X3-CORE-1031 - Conduct Preventive and Corrective Maintenance for the AAV7A1 FOV

1833-AULC-2045 - Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

References:

MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5636 Employ Coil Formation

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a designated base unit and a route.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Determine a defensible position with adequate cover, concealment, and area along the route of march to halt the unit.
- Direct lead element of unit to halt near the far end of the position and orient on the direction of march.
- Elements of the unit establish themselves in a circular position based on unit SOP and their position within the formation, with the lead element being at the "12 o'clock" position, determining their interval based on the terrain available.
- The formation should resemble a circle, within the limits of the terrain, with all elements oriented outward to ensure complete security.
- Unit resumes the original formation and direction of march.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

1833-AULC-2045 - Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5641 Conduct Riverine Operations

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The unit is ordered to operate in a river.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Determine river current speed and direction.
- Conduct terrain analysis.
- Employ Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures, established by the AA unit for riverine operations.
- Employ control measures required for mechanized forces in riverine operations.
- Determine CSS requirements for riverine operations, coordinate combat service support.

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2063 - Conduct Terrain Analysis

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5642 Cross a River

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The unit is required to cross a river.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference. All vehicles cross the river with proper planning and security.

Component Events:

- Establish far-side security.
- Complete river crossing and prepare for follow-on orders or further actions
- Determine river current speed and direction.
- Conduct terrain analysis.
- Establish near side security.
- Conduct pre-water-op checks
- In a permissive environment, use a splash team to initiate river crossing. In a non-permissive environment, conduct combat splash.

Related ITS:

- 1833-AULC-2063 - Conduct Terrain Analysis
- 18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver
- 1833-AULC-2045 - Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

References:

- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
- MCWP 3-17.1 River Crossing Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5656 Employ Traveling Movement Technique

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a designated base unit and a route.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Direct the unit to employ the traveling movement technique.
- Establish the rate of march and catch up speeds.
- Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
- Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
- Maintain the formation until the situation requires a change.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

1833-AULC-2045 - Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

References:

FMFRP 6-71-1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5657 Employ Traveling Overwatch Technique

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a designated base unit and a route.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Direct the unit to employ the traveling overwatch movement technique.
- Establish the rate of march and catch up speeds.
- Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
- Establish lead element and supporting element(s) within the unit.
- Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
- Maintain the formation until the situation requires a change.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

1833-AULC-2045 - Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

References:

FMFRP 6-71-1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5658 Employ Bounding Overwatch Technique

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a designated base unit and a route.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Direct the unit to employ the bounding overwatch technique (successive or alternate).
- Establish the lead element in an overwatch position, direct the size of the elements to bound (i.e. by vehicle, section, or platoon).
- Direct the next element in the formation to bound to the next covered and concealed position based on the terrain being covered.
- When the bounding unit is set and has established overwatch on the probable enemy position, it must indicate to the other elements that it is "set" so that they can begin the next bound.
- When informed that the first bounding element is set, the next element to bound takes the most concealed and covered route to its next overwatch position, establishes overwatch, and indicates that it is "set" to the rest of the unit.
- Units must employ the most covered and concealed route to their next position, maintain mutual support during their movement, and determine their most likely next position and route to that position while covering the movement of the bounding unit.
- Continue with the movement technique until enemy contact is made or the situation changes.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

1833-AULC-2045 - Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

References:

FMFRP 6-71-1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5659 Cross Danger Area

Evaluation Coded: Supported MET(s): 2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is moving and encounters a danger area that cannot be bypassed. The unit must provide its own security.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Establish near side security.
- Direct an AA element to cross, conduct reconnaissance of area on far side large enough for entire unit to establish position in, and establish far side security.
- Upon confirmation by far side security unit, direct the movement of unit across danger area. Keep dust signature and exposure time to a minimum.
- Establish original march formation after all elements have crossed danger area.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

1833-AULC-2045 - Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-OFF-4783 Conduct a Route Reconnaissance

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit is ordered to conduct a route reconnaissance. The unit is operating as the lead element of a larger unit's movement or separately as a security element in advance of the main body's movement.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Assess the serviceability of tunnels, bridges, and fording sites along the route.
- Assess any key or decisive terrain dominating the route.
- Report all control points and major events as they develop.
- Upon return to the supported unit, prepare a route reconnaissance overlay and a compilation of all site surveys conducted.
- Issue a warning order to the unit upon receipt of the order.
- Conduct mission analysis.
- Request any additional information or assets not originally provided in the OPORD.
- Coordinate with the unit directing the route reconnaissance for frequencies and call signs, pass words, recognition signals, fire support, MEDEVACS, threat information, and passage of friendly lines prior to conducting the reconnaissance.
- Brief the unit on the mission.
- Pass the start point (SP) at the designated time, reporting to the supported unit.
- Assess the trafficability of the route to all classes of vehicles and personnel in accordance with the engineering reports format.

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1090 - Identify Combat Vehicles and Helicopters

1833-AULC-2061 - Conduct Map Reconnaissance

References:

MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-OFF-4784 Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The unit has reached an objective, arrived at a new position, repelled an enemy attack, or restored defensive positions following a counterattack of enemy forces. The unit has received an order to consolidate its position.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Establish a hasty defense with security elements.
- Assess the combat power of each element from the reports submitted.
- Analyze future follow on operations.
- Replace key leaders and reestablish the chain of command.
- Task organize the remaining forces for future operations.
- Conduct recovery and resupply to include immediate cross leveling of ammunition, supplies, and fuel to provide minimum basic loads on all vehicles.
- Evacuate friendly and enemy personnel as necessary.
- Process all captured documents.
- Destroy or capture any remaining organized resistance to include enemy combat vehicles or drive the enemy from the sector and any key terrain.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

18X3-CORE-1030 - Coordinate Casualty Evacuation (CASEVAC) in an AAVP7A1

18X3-CORE-1031 - Conduct Preventive and Corrective Maintenance for the AAV7A1 FOV

1833-AULC-2045 - Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

18X3-AULC-2028 - Control Radio Communications

1833-AULC-2038 - Coordinate AA Unit in Preparations for Combat

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-OFF-5764 Conduct Immediate Action Drills

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2,7

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit confronts an unplanned tactical situation.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references.

Component Events:

- Employ M257 Grenade Launchers against enemy direct fire to screen vehicle positions from enemy observation.
- Employ actions against enemy air attack by moving vehicles out of the enemy impact area without traveling along the enemy's axis of attack.
- Employ actions against enemy indirect fire by moving vehicles out of the enemy impact area.
- Employ actions against enemy ambush by maneuvering vehicles away or against the enemy.
- Employ change formation drills to minimize time that unit is vulnerable to enemy attack.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
MCWP 3-13.1 Tank Mechanized Infantry Company Team

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-OFF-5767 Conduct Actions on Contact

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2,7

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

While participating in offensive operation, the unit encounters the enemy unit.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- React to contact with enemy forces to the front.
- Return fire.
- Alert the rest of the unit/element.
- Report contact to higher headquarters.
- Deploy the unit's firepower to establish suppression on enemy positions.
- Prepare to conduct bypass, hasty attack, or assume a hasty defense.
- React to contact with enemy forces to the right.
- React to contact with enemy forces to the left.
- React to contact with enemy forces to the rear.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

18X3-CORE-1090 - Identify Combat Vehicles and Helicopters

References:

MCWP 3-13.1 Tank Mechanized Infantry Company Team

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-OFF-5771 Support Infantry Offensive Operations

Evaluation Coded: Supported MET(s): 2,3,5,7

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given an order to support a unit in a hasty attack, deliberate attack, attack of a strongpoint, reconnaissance in force, feint, demonstration, mechanized raid, or counterattack.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference. Assist the supported unit in the planning and execution of its mission. The AA platoon is integrated into the supported unit's offensive scheme of maneuver.

Component Events:

- Acknowledge receipt of the higher headquarters' warning order and initiate planning.
- Issue warning order to subordinate units.
- Develop and issue the AA unit operations order.
- Establish liaison with higher, adjacent, and supporting units, as appropriate request direct liaison, when appropriate.
- Conduct rehearsals as time permits. Coordinate rehearsals with supported unit.
- Conduct leaders' reconnaissance as time permits.
- Coordinate passage of lines, if required.
- Conduct forward passage of lines with unit in contact with enemy force.
- Conduct movement to and conduct attack position activities.
- Cross Line of Departure.
- Conduct movement to and conduct dismount point activities.
- Initiate preparatory fires if included in the operations order.
- Provide support by fire.
- Conduct other mission as assigned by the operations order.
- Conduct breach of enemy obstacle belt, as necessary.
- Assault enemy objectives.
- Prepare for enemy counterattack.
- Prepare for follow on mission.
- Conduct combat reporting as required.
- Conduct preparation for combat, to include pre-combat checks and pre-combat inspections.
- Embark dismounted supported unit, if applicable.
- Conduct consolidation and reorganization on the objective.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Related CTS:

18X3-DEF -3411 - Employ Operational Security
18X3-MECH-4625 - Employ Column Formation
18X3-MECH-4626 - Employ Vee Formation
18X3-MECH-4627 - Employ Wedge Formation
18X3-MECH-4628 - Employ Line Formation
18X3-MECH-4629 - Employ Echelon Formation
18X3-MECH-5633 - Conduct Tactical Road March
18X3-MECH-4634 - Employ Herringbone Formation
18X3-MECH-4635 - Conduct Tactical Halt
18X3-MECH-5636 - Employ Coil Formation
18X3-MECH-5641 - Conduct Riverine Operations
18X3-MECH-5642 - Cross a River
18X3-MECH-5656 - Employ Traveling
18X3-MECH-5657 - Employ Traveling Overwatch
18X3-MECH-5658 - Employ Bounding Overwatch
18X3-MECH-5659 - Cross Danger Area
18X3-OFF -5764 - Conduct Immediate Action Drills
18X3-OFF -5767 - Conduct Actions on Contact
18X3-OFF -5772 - Conduct Attack Position Activities
18X3-OFF -5773 - Conduct Link Up
18X3-OFF -5775 - Conduct Passage of Lines
18X3-OFF -5776 - Conduct Dismount Point Activities
18X3-OFF -5783 - Conduct a Route Reconnaissance
18X3-OFF -5784 - Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization
18X3-OFF -5785 - Conduct Spoiling Attack
18X3-OFF -5787 - Support a Mechanized Patrol
18X3-OFF -5788 - Conduct an Observation Post
18X3-MCM -5585 - Breach Obstacle
18X3-MCM -5589 - Participate in Deliberate Breach
18X3-MCM -5590 - Conduct Amphibious Breaching

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2069 - Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAV
18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver
18X3-AULC-2028 - Control Radio Communications
1833-AULC-2038 - Coordinate AA Unit in Preparations for Combat
18X3-AULC-2025 - Navigate in an AAV

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-OFF-5772 Conduct Attack Position Activities

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The unit has reached the last covered or concealed position prior to crossing the line of departure.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference. The AA platoon is prepared administratively, logistically, and operationally to support an infantry offensive attack.

Component Events:

- Following passage of friendly lines, move to a covered and concealed position.
- Account for all elements of the unit.
- Conduct vehicle and equipment checks to determine mechanical casualties during the movement to the attack position. Conduct corrective maintenance and reorganization as necessary.
- Conduct weapons checks as the situation allows.
- Begin movement toward the objective.

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2038 - Coordinate AA Unit in Preparations for Combat

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-OFF-5773 Conduct Link Up

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Description:

A linkup is an operation where two friendly forces join together in a hostile area.

Condition:

The unit is required to conduct a linkup with another unit. One unit is directed to be the stationary unit.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference. A coordinated link-up is conducted with communications and safety procedures in place.

Component Events:

- Establish liaison as appropriate.
- Exchange frequencies, call signs, recognition signals, and obstacle plans as appropriate.
- Stationary force assumes responsibility for fire support and local security during link up.
- Moving force conducts tactical road march to stationary forces' position.
- Stationary force provides guides and coordinates link up.
- Moving force assumes prearranged position.
- Moving force uses guides and quartering party.

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2069 - Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAV
18X3-AULC-2028 - Control Radio Communications

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-OFF-5775 Conduct Passage of Lines

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Description:

A passage of lines is an operation where a force moves forward or rearward through another force's combat positions with the intention of moving into or out of contact with the enemy.

Condition:

The unit is required to conduct a passage of lines with another unit. The unit may or may not have supported unit embarked.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference. Passage of lines is thoroughly planned and conducted without creating any gaps in the defense.

Component Events:

- Establish liaison with stationary/moving unit as appropriate.
- Coordinate for use of guides.
- Moving unit approaches establishes contact with stationary unit.
- Stationary unit provides guides through their barriers in order to expedite movement.
- Stationary unit alerts elements of approach of friendly unit, status becomes weapons tight.
- Stationary unit controls movement and is responsible for coordinating responses to enemy action.
- Moving unit announces when all elements are cleared of stationary position.
- Moving and stationary units coordinate and shift responsibilities of engagement area at designated time or event.

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2069 - Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAV
18X3-AULC-2028 - Control Radio Communications

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-OFF-5776 Conduct Dismount Point Activities

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2,7

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

The unit has reached the last covered or concealed position prior to crossing the line of departure.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Move the unit into a covered and concealed position just beyond enemy observation and fire from the unit's objective using the appropriate security formation.
- Account for all elements of the unit prior to initiating the assault.
- Provide observation and supporting fires for embarked troops as they organize for the assault.
- Conduct any final coordination or reorganization necessary.
- Initiate assault with supporting fires, as appropriate.
- Dismount embarked troops.
- Displace to attack by fire/support by fire positions in accordance with the operations order.

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2069 - Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAV
18X3-CORE-1012 - Perform AA Unit Operational Safety Procedures

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-OFF-5785 Conduct Spoiling Attack

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2,7

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The unit is in the defense and is ordered to conduct a spoiling attack. The unit may or may not be supporting an embarked unit.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references. The AA platoon seriously impairs a hostile attack while the enemy is in the process of forming or assembling for an attack.

Component Events:

- Attack enemy before he begins final attack formation.
- Coordinate fires and movement with higher headquarters and adjacent units.
- Plan for attack.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2025 - Navigate in an AAV

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

References:

MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-OFF-5787 Support a Mechanized Patrol

Evaluation Coded: Supported MET(s): 2,7

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The unit is assigned the mission to conduct a mechanized patrol. The unit is operating as part of a larger unit in the defense. The unit must provide its own security.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Issue warning order.
- Submit patrol plan to higher headquarters.
- Issue approved patrol order to unit and conduct rehearsals.
- Conduct coordination with forward unit prior to departure.
- Conduct passage of lines.
- Execute patrol order.
- Conduct combat reporting.
- Return to friendly position.
- Conduct after operations checks and services.
- Debrief the patrol.

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2069 - Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAV

References:

MCO 3501.29 Infantry Training and Readiness Manual

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-OFF-5790 Support Military Operations in Urban Terrain

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 2,7

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The AA unit is required to conduct operations in built up areas in support of infantry operations in urban terrain.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and references. The AA unit is integrated into the supported unit's scheme of maneuver throughout the operation.

Component Events:

- Advise supported unit commander on capabilities and limitations of AAVs in Urban Terrain.
- Conduct terrain analysis with respect to urban terrain.

Related ITS:

- 18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver
- 1833-AULC-2069 - Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAV
- 1833-AULC-2063 - Conduct Terrain Analysis
- 1833-AULC-2045 - Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

References:

- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
- MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)
- MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-VEH-3828 Conduct Hasty Demolition to Prevent Enemy Use

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,6, and 8

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The AAV crew is ordered to destroy a disabled AAV. Enemy contact will occur in 20 minutes.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference. The AAV crew destroys the disabled AAV within 15 minutes.

Component Events:

- Establish local security around disabled AAV.
- Determine amount of time available to conduct repair or salvage operations.
- If speed is essential or enemy pressure is present prepare vehicle for hasty demolition by:
 - a. Removing all wounded and dead personnel from vehicle.
 - b. Removing any personal weapons and equipment.
 - c. Open ramp and cargo hatches.
 - d. Disable fire suppression system.
 - e. Clear all radios if time permits.
- Have all personnel and vehicles move at least 500 meters from disabled AAV.
- Have designated vehicle(s) fire salvo of MK-19 40mm rounds into troop compartment or throw incendiary hand grenade until onboard ammunition and fuel ignite or explode.

Related CTS:

18X3-WPNS-4924 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 9 (Section)

References:

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Ordnance: G900 GRENADE, HAND, INCENDIARY, M14 3 per crew

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-VEH-3838 Start AAV Engine from Outside Power Source

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,5,6,7, and 8.

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The AAV crew has a vehicle with dead batteries.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and the reference.

Component Events:

- The power source is positioned so that it can reach the disabled AAV with its slave cable.
- The crew of the disabled AAV checks the reverse polarity indicator light and activates the reset button on the power distribution box.
- The crew attempts to start the disabled AAV with operational power source operating.
- With AAV engine operating, the crews disconnect the slave cable and prepare for operations.
- The disabled AAV is prepared for slave starting.

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1081 - Operate AAVP7A1

References:

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-VEH-3853 Operate AAV on Land

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,6, and 8

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

Given a route.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and the reference.

Component Events:

- Verify that all cargo is tied down for travel.
- Check operating systems to ensure vehicle is functioning properly.
- Perform during operations checks.
- Observe driving cautions.
- Perform during operation checks.
- Perform after operations checks.
- Perform pre-operations checks.
- Verify that all personnel are properly seated and wearing helmets and flak jackets.
- Verify that all hatches are properly secured:
 - a. Ramp is up and dogged.
 - b. Turret, driver, and troop commander hatches are secured.
 - c. Cargo hatches are secured.
- Drive the AAV on land.

Related CTS:

18X3-VEH -3807 - Employ AAV Operational Safety Procedures

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1081 - Operate AAVP7A1

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-VEH-3854 Evacuate Wounded Crewmember from Each Crew Station

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,6, and 8

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The AAV crew receives crewmember casualties during operations.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and the reference. The wounded crewman is evacuated to and receives the appropriate level of medical care.

Component Events:

- Stop the vehicle in a covered and concealed position.
- Determine the extent of the crewman's injuries, administer first aid, and stabilize him.
- Determine the best method for evacuating the wounded crewmember, either up and through the hatch or down and through the troop compartment.
- If evacuating him up and through a hatch, have a second crewmember assist from below, while using the helo lifting strap on the crewman's uniform to raise him clear of the hatch. Lower him over the side of the vehicle to the second crewmen waiting to assist.
- Move the injured crewman to a covered position and continue first aid as appropriate.
- Evacuate the injured crewman to casualty collection point or call in medevac based on operational situation.

References:

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-VEH-3855 Employ Terrain Driving Techniques

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,7, and 8.

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Condition:

Given a route.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and the references.

Component Events:

- Scan the ground for disturbed earth or out-of-place features that may indicate mines.
- Use covered and concealed routes.
- Minimize dust signature.
- Maintain appropriate interval between vehicles.
- Avoid silhouetting the vehicles.
- The AAV crew reverses out of vehicle positions to avoid detection.

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1081 - Operate AAVP7A1

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-VEH-4839 Tow Start an AAV

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,6, and 8.

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The AA unit has a disabled AAV that can be tow started.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and the reference.

Component Events:

- Conduct preoperations checks on both vehicles.
- Prepare the disabled vehicle for tow starting.
- The tow bar or cables are connected to the bow of the disabled vehicle and the stern of the towing vehicle at the towing eyes.
- The disabled vehicle is towed at the prescribed speed on a level surface until it starts.
- When vehicle starts, signal towing vehicle and bring both vehicles to halt.
- Disconnect tow bar or tow cables.
- Engage hydrostatic steer unit.

Related CTS:

18X3-VEH -3841 - Tow AAV on Land

18X3-VEH -3807 - Employ AAV Operational Safety Procedures

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1081 - Operate AAVP7A1

1833-AULC-2084 - Coordinate Recovery of Disabled AAV

References:

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-VEH-4841 Tow AAV on Land

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,6, and 8

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The AA unit has a disabled AAV on land.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and the reference.

Component Events:

- Connect the tow bar to the forward towing eyes of disabled vehicle and to tow pintle of tow vehicle.
- When using tow cables, connect one end of the tow cable to the forward towing eye of disabled vehicle. Cross connect the other end of the tow cable to aft towing eye of tow vehicle.
- If brakes on towing vehicle are not working, use a third vehicle connected to the rear of the disabled vehicle to aid in stopping the disabled vehicle.
- When towing a vehicle equipped with a bow plane on land, the bow plane must be fully retracted. If the bow plane cannot be retracted from the driver's station, it should be removed from the vehicle before attaching tow cables or tow bar.
- Disengage hydrostatic steering unit of disabled vehicle by pulling lever outboard, then aft.
- Disengage power takeoff by pulling lever outboard, then forward.
- Have organizational maintenance disconnect final drive universal joints.

Related CTS:

18X3-VEH -3807 - Employ AAV Operational Safety Procedures

18X3-VEH -3853 - Operate AAV on Land

Related ITS:

1833-AULC-2084 - Coordinate Recovery of Disabled AAV

18X3-CORE-1081 - Operate AAVP7A1

References:

MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-VEH-4845 Recover Disabled AAV

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,6, and 8

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The AA unit has a nosed-in or overturned AAV.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and the references.

Component Events:

- Reconnoiter area, establish security as necessary.
- Estimate the situation.
- Compute an estimated mechanical advantage for the rigging.
- Compute the tackle resistance and total resistance.
- Verify the solution.
- Orient the personnel and instruct them to assemble the rigging and then move to a safe location.
- Recheck rigging.
- Conduct recovery.
- Tow disabled AAV.

Related CTS:

18X3-VEH -3807 - Employ AAV Operational Safety Procedures

18X3-VEH -3841 - Tow AAV on Land

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1081 - Operate AAVP7A1

1833-AULC-2084 - Coordinate Recovery of Disabled AAV

References:

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-VEH-5827 Employ Smoke Generation System

Evaluation Coded: Supported MET(s): 1,2,7, and 8.

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The AA unit is operating under enemy observation and fire. The weather permits concealment with smoke generation system.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and reference.

Component Events:

- Determine wind speed and direction.
- Signal commencing smoke generation systems.
- Coordinate employment of smoke generation system.
- Signal ceasing smoke generation systems.
- Determine effect of smoke generation system.

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1083 - Employ Smoke Generation System

References:

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-WPNS-3920 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6 (Crew)

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,7, and 8.

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Description:

Demonstrate gunnery and crew proficiency in moving vehicle to a firing position and in ammunition reloading.

Condition:

Given an AAV with crew, ammunition by type and quantity as directed in the gunnery tables, a suitable range and range personnel, appropriate collateral material, and the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists in Annex A contained within this manual.

Prerequisite Events:

Must pass individual gunnery tables 1 through 5 as prerequisite to firing this gunnery table.

Related CTS:

18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1091 - Employ Upgunned Weapon Station

18X3-CORE-1042 - Prepare AAV Range Card

18X3-CORE-1090 - Identify Combat Vehicles and Helicopters

References:

TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3

TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-WPNS-3921 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7 (Crew)

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,7, and 8.

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Description:

Demonstrate gunnery and crew proficiency in ammunition reload while operating in an NBC environment.

Condition:

Given an AAV with crew in MOPP 4, ammunition by type and quantity as directed in the gunnery tables, a suitable range and range personnel, appropriate collateral material, and the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists while operating in a simulated NBC environment.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists in Annex A contained within this manual.

Prerequisite Events:

Must complete individual gunnery tables 1 through 5, and crew gunnery table 6 as prerequisite to firing this gunnery table.

Related CTS:

18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification

18X3-WPNS-3920 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6 (Crew)

Related ITS:

18X3-CORE-1091 - Employ Upgunned Weapon Station

18X3-CORE-1090 - Identify Combat Vehicles and Helicopters

References:

TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3

TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1

TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range

Ordnance:

A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2 50 per crew

B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19 12 per crew

Equipment: Stopwatch

Other Units/Personnel: Designated-evaluator

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-WPNS-3922 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8 (Crew)

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,7, and 8.

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Description:

Demonstrate gunnery and crew proficiency in moving vehicle to a firing position and in ammunition reloading during night operations.

Condition:

Given an AAV with crew, ammunition by type and quantity as directed in the gunnery tables, a suitable range and range personnel, night/limited visibility conditions, and the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists in Annex A contained within this manual.

Prerequisite Events:

Must complete individual gunnery tables 1 through 5, and crew gunnery tables 6 and 7 as prerequisite to firing this gunnery table.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification
- 18X3-WPNS-3920 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6 (Crew)
- 18X3-WPNS-3921 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7 (Crew)

Related ITS:

- 18X3-CORE-1091 - Employ Upgunned Weapon Station
- 18X3-CORE-1090 - Identify Combat Vehicles and Helicopters

References:

- TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1
- TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range

Ordnance:

- A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2 100 per crew
- B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19 48 per crew

Equipment: Stopwatch

Other Units/Personnel: Designated-evaluator

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-WPNS-3923 Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,7, and 8.

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

Given an AAV with crew, ammunition by type and quantity as directed in the gunnery tables, a suitable range and range personnel, and the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists.

Standard:

Crews obtain a minimum score of 75 percent individually on AAV Gunnery Training Tables 1,2,6,7, and 8.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification
- 18X3-WPNS-3920 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6 (Crew)
- 18X3-WPNS-3921 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7 (Crew)
- 18X3-WPNS-3922 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8 (Crew)
- 18X3-WPNS-4924 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 9 (Section)

Related ITS:

- 18X3-CORE-1091 - Employ Upgunned Weapon Station
- 18X3-CORE-1090 - Identify Combat Vehicles and Helicopters

References:

- TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1
- TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3
- TM 02498A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
- TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range

Ordnance:

- A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2 270 per crew
- B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19 132 per crew

Equipment: Stopwatch, MOPP suits/NBC equipment

Other Units/Personnel: SNCO or officer not in the chain of command and has completed the Evaluate Crew Qualification ITS.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-WPNS-4924 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 9 (Section)

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,7, and 8.

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Description:

The purpose of the section table is to evaluate the section leader's ability to control his section's fire and the proficiency of the section to act as a team by demonstrating a support by fire for the infantry in the attack. AAV Gunnery Table IX demonstrates the sections employment of the M257 Grenade Launcher System. Weapons should not fire faster than their sustained rates of fire.

Condition:

Given an AAV section with crews, ammunition by type and quantity as directed in the gunnery tables, a suitable range and range personnel, and the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists in Annex A contained within this manual.

Related CTS:

18X3-WPNS-3920 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6 (Crew)
18X3-WPNS-3921 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7 (Crew)
18X3-WPNS-3922 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8 (Crew)
18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification
18X3-VEH -3853 - Operate AAV on Land

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver
18X3-CORE-1091 - Employ Upgunned Weapon Station
18X3-AULC-2028 - Control Radio Communications

References:

TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2
TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1
TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1
TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary
Gunnery Range

Ordnance:

G826 GRENADE, SMK, IR SCRN 8 per crew

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2 100 per crew
B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19 96 per crew
Equipment: Stopwatch
Other Units/Personnel: Designated-evaluator

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-WPNS-4925 Perform AA Section Gunnery Qualification

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,7, and 8.

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

Given an AAV section with crews, ammunition by type and quantity as directed in the gunnery tables, a suitable range and range personnel, appropriate collateral material, and the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists.

Standard:

Each AAV crew passing AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification and shooting a minimum score of 75% on AAV Gunnery Training Table 9 (Section).

Component Events:

- The section performs AAV Gunnery Training Table 9.
- Each AAV crew conducts 18X3-WPNS-3923 Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-WPNS-3920 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6 (Crew)
- 18X3-WPNS-3921 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7 (Crew)
- 18X3-WPNS-3922 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8 (Crew)
- 18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification
- 18X3-WPNS-4324 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 9 (Section)
- 18X3-WPNS-4925 - Perform AA Section Gunnery Qualification

Related ITS:

- 18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver
- 18X3-CORE-1091 - Employ Upgunned Weapon Station
- 18X3-AULC-2028 - Control Radio Communications
- 18X3-MOJT-1082 - Prepare AAV for Night/Limited Visibility Operations

References:

- TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2
- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
- TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1
- TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3
- TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary
Gunnery Range

Equipment: Stopwatch, MOPP suits/NBC equipment

Other Units/Personnel: SNCO or officer not in the chain of command
that has completed the Evaluate Crew Qualification ITS.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-WPNS-5980 Conduct AA Platoon Live Fire and Maneuver Assault

Evaluation Coded: **Supported MET(s):** 1,2,7, and 8.

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Condition:

The unit is overwatching or supporting by fire the movement of another unit or element during movement or an assault on an enemy objective. The principle directions of fire, support and assault positions have been designated for the overwatching/supporting unit and the moving/assaulting unit.

Standard:

In accordance with the component events and the references.

Component Events:

- AA platoon designates a fire support and a assault elements.
- AA platoon or elements assault through the objective.
- Fires are lifted or shifted on order from assaulting element.

Prerequisite Events:

Each section of the AA platoon must successfully complete all gunnery training tables 1 through 9 as prerequisites.

Related ITS:

18X3-AULC-2066 - Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

18X3-AULC-2028 - Control Radio Communications

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Range/Training Area: Live fire and maneuver range

Ordnance: A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2 400 per crew

This page left intentionally blank.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

INDIVIDUAL TRAINING

	<u>Page</u>
APPENDIX	
A	INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS..... 4-A-1
B	BILLET CORE CAPABILITIES FOR MOS 1833 MARINE..... 4-B-1
C	BILLET CORE CAPABILITIES FOR MOS 1803 MARINE..... 4-C-1
D	INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS FOR MOS 18X3..... 4-D-1
E	INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS FOR MOS 1833..... 4-E-1
D	INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS FOR MOS 1803..... 4-F-1

This page left intentionally blank.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

APPENDIX A

INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

4000. INDEX SORTED BY MOS

A. Basic Assault Amphibian (18X3). All Basic Assault Amphibian ITS events are taught to both 1803/1833 during initial accession training at Assault Amphibian Schools Battalion.

Event Code	Event	Page Number
18X3-CORE-1010	Complete Individual Surf Qualification	4-D-2
18X3-CORE-1012	Perform AAV Operational Safety Procedures	4-D-3
18X3-CORE-1022	Operate AAV Communication Equipment	4-D-4
18X3-CORE-1031	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services for the AAV	4-D-5
18X3-CORE-1042	Prepare AAV Range Card	4-D-7
18X3-CORE-1081	Operate the AAV	4-D-8
18X3-CORE-1083	Employ Smoke Generation System	4-D-9
18X3-CORE-1086	Perform Installation/Removal of Medium Machine Gun on AAVC7A1	4-D-10
18X3-CORE-1089	Conduct Bore Sighting of Uppgunned Weapon Station	4-D-11
18X3-CORE-1090	Identify Combat Vehicles and Helicopters	4-D-12
18X3-CORE-1091	Employ Uppgunned Weapon Station	4-D-13
18X3-CORE-1093	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 1	4-D-15
18X3-CORE-1094	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 2	4-D-16

B. Assault Amphibian Crewman (1833). All Assault Amphibian Crewman ITS events are performed by an MOS 1833 Marine not included in the Basic Assault Amphibian (18X3) list of events.

Event Code	Event	Page Number
1833-AULC-2013	Coordinate Embarkation/Debarcation Plans on Amphibious Shipping with Naval Personnel	4-E-2
1833-AULC-2016	Develop Surf Observation (SUROB) Report	4-E-4
1833-AULC-2017	Perform Duties of Wave Commander	4-E-6
1833-AULC-2025	Navigate in an AAV	4-E-8
1833-AULC-2028	Control Radio Communications	4-E-9
1833-AULC-2033	Conduct Casualty Evacuation (CASEVAC) in an AAVP7A1	4-E-12
1833-AULC-2038	Coordinate AA Unit in Preparations for Combat	4-E-13
1833-AULC-2039	Coordinate AA Unit Operation/Deployment Embarkation	4-E-14

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Event Code	Event	Page Number
1833-AULC-2045	Assign Unit Sectors of Fire	4-E-15
1833-AULC-2047	Coordinate AA Unit Fire Plan Sketch with Supported Unit Commander	4-E-17
1833-AULC-2050	Operate the MK 154 Mine Clearance System	4-E-18
1833-AULC-2058	Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of MK 154 Mine Clearance System	4-E-19
1833-AULC-2059	Coordinate Mine Countermeasures Operations with Supported Unit	4-E-20
1833-AULC-2061	Conduct Map Reconnaissance	4-E-21
1833-AULC-2062	Conduct Terrain Analysis	4-E-22
1833-AULC-2063	Conduct Threat Analysis	4-E-23
1833-AULC-2066	Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver	4-E-24
1833-AULC-2069	Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAVs	4-E-26
1833-AULC-2082	Prepare AAV for Night/Limited Visibility Operations	4-E-28
1833-AULC-2084	Coordinate Recovery of Disabled AAV	4-E-29
1833-AULC-2085	Monitor Unit Maintenance	4-E-30
1833-AULC-2095	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 3	4-E-32
1833-AULC-2096	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 4	4-E-33
1833-AULC-2097	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 5	4-E-34
1833-AULC-2098	Evaluate Individual AAV Gunnery Training Qualification	4-E-35

C. Assault Amphibian Officer (1803). All Assault Amphibian Officer ITS events are performed by an MOS 1803 Officer in addition to those included in the Basic Assault Amphibian (18X3) list of events.

Event Code	Event	Page Number
1803-AAOC-1013	Coordinate Embarkation/Debarcation Plans on Amphibious Shipping with Naval Personnel	4-F-2
1803-AAOC-1016	Develop Surf Observation (SUROB) Report	4-F-4
1803-AAOC-1017	Perform Duties of Wave Commander	4-F-6
1803-AAOC-2018	Assist in Developing the Landing Plan	4-F-7
1803-AAOC-1025	Navigate in an AAV	4-F-9
1803-AAOC-1028	Control Radio Communications	4-F-11
1803-AAOC-1029	Perform Duties as Special Staff Officer	4-F-13
1803-AAOC-1033	Conduct Casualty Evacuation (CASEVAC) in an AAVP7A1	4-F-15
1803-AAOC-1038	Coordinate AA Unit in Preparations for Combat	4-F-16
1803-MOJT-2039	Coordinate AA Unit Operation/Deployment Embarkation	4-F-17
1803-AAOC-1045	Assign Unit Sectors of Fire	4-F-18
1803-AAOC-1047	Coordinate AA Unit Fire Plan Sketch with Supported Unit Commander	4-F-19
1803-MOJT-2050	Operate the MK 154 Mine Clearance System	4-F-20

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Event Code	Event	Page Number
1803-MOJT-2058	Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of MK 154 Mine Clearance System	4-F-21
1803-MOJT-2059	Coordinate Mine Countermeasures Operations with Supported Unit	4-F-22
1803-AAOC-1061	Conduct Map Reconnaissance	4-F-23
1803-AAOC-1062	Conduct Terrain Analysis	4-F-24
1803-AAOC-1063	Conduct Threat Analysis	4-F-25
1803-AAOC-1066	Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver	4-F-26
1803-AAOC-1069	Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAVs	4-F-28
1803-AAOC-1084	Coordinate Recovery of Disabled AAV	4-F-30
1803-AAOC-1085	Monitor Unit Maintenance	4-F-31
1803-AAOC-1095	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 3	4-F-32
1803-AAOC-1096	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 4	4-F-33
1803-AAOC-1097	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 5	4-F-34
1803-AAOC-1098	Evaluate Individual AAV Gunnery Training Qualification	4-F-35

This page left intentionally blank.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

1833 ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN CREWMAN

APPENDIX B

BILLET CORE CAPABILITIES

BILLET: Crewman, AAV

Junior 1833 Crewman on the AAV.

Core Capabilities:

1. Executes crewchief's commands related to employment and function of the vehicle.
 2. Assists in the performance of vehicle pre-operations (ops), during-ops, at-halt, and after-ops checks.
 3. Assists in the performance of PMCS, to include vehicle weapons.
 4. Camouflages vehicle.
 5. Maintains vehicle security and security of collateral equipment.
 6. Assists embarked personnel in vehicle evacuation and responsible for maintaining order in the troop compartment during operations afloat.
 7. Operates vehicle afloat and/or ashore.
 8. Operates vehicle communication system utilizing proper procedures.
 9. Assists gunner in reloading the weapons station, as rear crewman.
 10. Assists the gunner in acquiring targets with the UGWS as driver.
-

BILLET: Crewman, AAVP7A1/RAM RS with MK 154 LMC Mod O Kit

Junior 1833 Crewman on the AAVP7A1/RAM RS with MK 154 LMC Mod O kit.

Core Capabilities:

1. Executes crewchief's commands related to employment and function of the vehicle, weapons, and MK 154 kit.
2. Assists in the performance of pre-ops, during-ops, at-halt, and after-ops checks.
3. Assists in the performance of PMCS, to include vehicle weapons and MK 154 kit.
4. Camouflages vehicle.
5. Maintains vehicle security and security of collateral equipment.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

6. Assists embarked personnel in vehicle evacuation and responsible for maintaining order in the troop compartment during operations afloat.
 7. Operates vehicle afloat and/or ashore.
 8. Operates vehicle communication system utilizing proper procedures.
 9. Assists the crewchief in reloading the weapon station as rear crewman.
 10. Assists the crewchief in acquiring targets with the UGWS as driver.
-

BILLET: Crewchief, AAVP7A1/RAM RS

Senior 1833 Crewman aboard the AAV. The crewchief leads two crewmen and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the AAVP7A1/RAM RS and all associated collateral gear. The crewchief operates the upgunned weapon station.

Core Capabilities:

1. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his crew.
 2. Responsible for the all embarked personnel and equipment.
 3. Coordinates and supervises the vehicle crew in the performance of PMCS.
 4. Instructs vehicle crew and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
 5. Requisitions and supervises the distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, rations, petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) through his section leader and chain of command.
 6. Maintains vehicle logbook.
 7. Employs vehicle weapon station and comm system utilizing the proper procedures.
 8. Responsible for loading and unloading of vehicle.
-

BILLET: Crewchief, AAVP7A1/RAM RS with MK 154 LMC Mod O Kit

Senior 1833 Crewman aboard the AAVP7A1/RAM RS with MK 154 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System. The crewchief leads two crewmen and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the AAV and all associated collateral gear. The crewchief operates the upgunned weapon station.

Core Capabilities:

1. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his crew.
2. Responsible for embarked personnel and equipment.
3. Coordinates and supervises the vehicle crew in the performance of PMCS.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

4. Instructs vehicle crew and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
 5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, rations, petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) through his section leader and chain of command.
 6. Maintains vehicle logbook.
 7. Employs MK 154 Mod 0 mine clearance system, vehicle weapons station, and comm system utilizing the proper procedures.
 8. Responsible for loading and unloading of vehicle.
-

BILLET: Crewchief, AAVC7A1

Senior 1833 Crewman aboard the AAVC7A1. The crewchief leads two crewmen and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the AAVC7A1 and all associated collateral gear. The crewchief rides in the vehicle commander's hatch.

Core Capabilities:

1. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his crew.
 2. Responsible for embarked personnel and equipment.
 3. Coordinates and supervises the vehicle crew in the performance of PMCS.
 4. Instructs vehicle crew and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
 5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, rations, petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) through his section leader and chain of command.
 6. Maintains vehicle logbook.
 7. Employs vehicle weapon and comm system utilizing the proper procedures.
 8. Responsible for loading and unloading of vehicle.
-

BILLET: Section Leader, AA Section

Senior 1833 Marine in AA section of two or more vehicles. The section leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section. The section leader rides in the weapon station. During water operations, either in the ocean or river, the AA section leader maintains control of the tactical movement of the AA section.

Core Capabilities:

1. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his crew.
2. Responsible for embarked personnel and equipment.
3. Coordinates and supervises the vehicle crews in the performance of PMCS.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

4. Instructs vehicle crews and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, rations, petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) through his platoon sergeant and chain of command.
6. Audits vehicle logbook.
7. Employs his vehicle's weapon station, and comm system utilizing the proper procedures.
8. Trains his section in the performance of tasks which support platoon training objectives.
9. Controls his section's maneuver and fires.
10. Advises the supported unit commander in the employment of his section.

BILLET: Section Leader, AA Mine Countermeasure (MCM) Section

Senior 1833 crewman in section with two or more vehicles, at least one vehicle possesses the MK 154 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System. The section leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section. The section leader will ride in the weapon station. During water operations, either in the ocean or river, the AA section leader maintains control of the tactical movement of the AA section.

Core Capabilities:

1. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his section.
2. Responsible for all embarked personnel and equipment.
3. Coordinates and supervises vehicle crews in the performance of PMCS.
4. Instructs vehicle crews and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, rations, petroleum, oil, lubricants, and ammunition through his platoon sergeant and chain of command.
6. Audits vehicle logbooks.
7. Employs his vehicle's weapon stations, and comm system utilizing proper procedures.
8. Trains the section in the performance of tasks which support platoon training objectives.
9. Controls his section's maneuver, fires, and MK 154 LMC kits.
10. Advises the supported unit commander in the employment of his section.

BILLET: Section Leader, AA Command Section

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Senior 1833 Marine in command section with two or more vehicles, with at least one of the vehicles an AAVC7A1. The section leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section.

Core Capabilities:

1. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his section.
2. Responsible for all embarked personnel and equipment.
3. Coordinates and supervises vehicle crews in the performance of PMCS.
4. Instructs vehicle crews and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, rations, petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) through his platoon sergeant and chain of command.
6. Audits vehicle logbooks.
7. Employs his vehicle's and section's weapon stations, and comm system utilizing proper procedures.
8. Trains the section in the performance of tasks which support platoon training objectives.
9. Controls his section's maneuver and fires.
10. Advises the supported unit commander in the employment of his section.

BILLET: Platoon Sergeant, AA Platoon

Senior 1833 and second in command of the AA platoon. Positioned in the weapon station of the platoon's logistics vehicle. He is responsible for maintaining the platoon's vehicles and all associated collateral gear. He advises the AA platoon commander on training, welfare, and administrative functions within the platoon.

Core Capabilities:

1. Maintains the welfare and discipline of the platoon.
2. Assists in all maintenance management functions for the AA platoon.
3. Advises the AA platoon commander in the logistical support of the platoon.
4. Instructs AA platoon and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, ammunition, rations, petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) through his chain of command.
6. Employs his vehicle's weapon station and comm system utilizing proper procedures.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

7. Trains the platoon in the performance of tasks which support platoon training objectives.
 8. Controls the employment of his vehicle.
 9. Assumes command in platoon commander's absence.
 10. Coordinates embarkation of vehicles and unit.
 11. Coordinates logistical support for AA unit operations.
 12. Coordinates all recovery and evacuation operations.
-

BILLET: Platoon Sergeant, AA Mine Countermeasure (MCM) Platoon

Senior 1833 crewman and second in command of the MCM Platoon. Positioned in the weapon station of the platoon's logistics vehicle. He is responsible for maintaining the platoon's vehicles and all associated collateral gear. He advises the AAV platoon commander on training, welfare, and administrative functions within the platoon.

Core Capabilities:

1. Maintains the welfare and discipline of the platoon.
 2. Assists in all maintenance management functions for AA platoon.
 3. Advises the AA platoon commander in the logistical support of the platoon.
 4. Instructs AA platoon and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
 5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, ammunition, rations, petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) through his chain of command.
 6. Employs his vehicle's weapon station and comm system utilizing proper procedures.
 7. Trains the platoon in the performance of tasks which support platoon training objectives.
 8. Controls the employment of his vehicle.
 9. Assumes command in platoon commander's absence.
 10. Coordinates embarkation of vehicles and unit.
 11. Coordinates logistical support for AA unit operations.
 12. Coordinates all recovery and evacuation operations.
-

BILLET: Company Operations Chief

Second most senior 1833 Marine in the AA company. Assists the company gunnery sergeant in all logistical and training requirements.

Core Capabilities:

1. Assists the company commander in monitoring, conducting, reporting, and supervising unit training.

2. Conducts quartering party operations and assembly area activities.
 3. Instructs company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
 4. Assists in planning future operations.
-

BILLET: Company Gunnery Sergeant

Senior 1833 Marine in the AA company. He is the duty expert in all 1833 operations and training for the AA company. Responsible for all logistical and training requirements.

Core Capabilities:

1. Advises the company commander on unit training.
 2. Coordinates unit logistical support.
 3. Determines unit logistical requirements.
 4. Coordinates embarkation of company vehicles and personnel.
 5. Coordinates quartering party operations and assembly area activities.
 6. Instructs company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
 7. Assists the company commander in coordinating, conducting, and supervising unit training.
-

BILLET: Battalion Operations Chief

Senior 1833 Marine in the battalion operations section.

Core Capabilities:

1. Advises the operations officer on unit training.
 2. Coordinates battalion individual and unit training.
 3. Coordinates COC setup and operations.
 4. Serves as senior enlisted Marine in combat operations center.
 5. Coordinates assembly area activities.
 6. Evaluates individual and unit training.
 7. Coordinates operations section embarkation plans.
 8. Assists the operations officer in planning future operations.
 9. Advises the AA battalion commander on all 1833 Marine matters.
-

BILLET: Battalion Logistics Chief

Senior 1833 Marine in the battalion logistics section.

Core Capabilities:

1. Advises the logistics officer on unit logistical requirements.
 2. Coordinates battalion logistical support.
 3. Assists in development of logistical requirements and support for operations.
 4. Determines logistical requirements for unit training.
 5. Coordinates battalion embarkation plans.
 6. Monitors battalion hazardous material section.
 7. Coordinates LOC setup and operations.
 8. Serves as senior enlisted in LOC.
-

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

1803 ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN OFFICER

APPENDIX C

BILLET CORE CAPABILITIES

BILLET: AA Platoon Commander

Responsible for the vehicles and crews in an AA platoon. When he is the senior AA officer assigned to an infantry battalion, he also serves as a special staff officer to the infantry battalion commander. The primary duty of the AA platoon commander is to advise the infantry company commander on the use of AAVs in support of the assigned mission. The AA platoon commander directs the maneuver and fires of his platoon in accordance with the intent of the infantry company commander. The AA platoon commander occupies the weapon station of the AAV that is utilized by the infantry company commander as his command vehicle. During water operations the AA platoon commander maintains control of the tactical movement of the AA unit.

Core Capabilities:

1. Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks which support company training objectives.
2. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his platoon.
3. Makes operational planning recommendations to the supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit.
4. Manages the preventative maintenance and corrective maintenance efforts on all vehicles and all associated collateral equipment.
5. Employs proper movement techniques and formations.
6. Employs operational safety procedures.
7. Employs vehicle and unit fires in support of mission and in self-defense.
8. Advises supported unit commander on logistical requirements of AA unit.
9. Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.
10. Leads AA platoon and embarked personnel in amphibious operations.

BILLET: AA MEU Platoon Commander

Responsible for the vehicles and crews in an AA platoon. He is the senior AA officer assigned to an infantry battalion and serves as a special staff officer to the battalion landing team commander. The primary duty of the AA platoon commander is to advise the mechanized company commander on the use of AAVs in support of the assigned

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

mission. The AA platoon commander occupies the weapon station of the AAV utilized by the infantry company commander as his command vehicle. The AA platoon commander directs the maneuver and fires of his platoon in accordance with the intent of the infantry company commander. During water operations the AA platoon commander maintains control of the tactical movement of the AA unit. He leads a platoon of AA crewmen, mechanics, communicators, and corpsman. He is responsible for all vehicle maintenance and all associated collateral gear including additional support equipment. The MEU platoon commander has a greater responsibility than the AA platoon commander due to additional tasks of maintenance management and second echelon maintenance.

Core Capabilities:

1. Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks which support company training objectives.
2. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his platoon.
3. Manages the preventative maintenance and corrective maintenance efforts on all vehicles and all associated collateral equipment.
4. Advises supported unit commander on employment of AA unit.
5. Employs proper movement techniques and formations.
6. Employs operational safety procedures.
7. Employs vehicle and unit fires in support of mission and in self-defense.
8. Advises supported unit commander on logistical requirements of AA unit.
9. Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.
10. Leads AA platoon and embarked personnel in amphibious operations.
11. Monitors maintenance management and supply support.
12. Advises supported unit commander on embarkation procedures of AA unit.

BILLET: AA Mine Countermeasure Platoon Commander

Responsible for the vehicles and crews in the AA Mine Countermeasure (MCM) platoon. The MCM platoon commander supports the Ground Combat Element with breaching capability. The MCM platoon commander leads two sections of Marines that crew AAVP7A1/RAM RSs with and without MK 154 LMC Mod 0 kits.

Core Capabilities:

1. Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks which support company training objectives.
2. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his platoon.
3. Manages the preventative maintenance and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

4. Advises supported unit commander on employment of unit and MK154 Mod 0.
 5. Employs operational safety procedures.
 6. Advises supported unit commander on logistical requirements of AA unit.
 7. Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.
-

BILLET: AA Company Executive Officer

Second most senior 1803 in the AA company. Assumes command in commander's absence.

Core Capabilities:

1. Makes operational planning recommendations to company commander on unit training and operations.
 2. Coordinates and supervises unit training and operations.
 3. Coordinates range operations.
 4. Coordinates unit logistical support and requirements.
 5. Trains AA platoon commanders in performance of duties.
 6. Coordinates, conducts, and supervises ancillary training events.
-

BILLET: AA Company Commander

The AA company commander works for the commanding officer of the supported infantry regiment or battalion and becomes a special staff officer to the supported infantry commander. The AA company commander leads one or more AA platoons and a maintenance platoon. He is responsible for all vehicle maintenance and all associated collateral gear including additional support equipment.

Core Capabilities:

1. Directs the logistics support organic to the AA company in support of his AAVs.
 2. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his company.
 3. Advises the supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit.
 4. Advises the supported unit commander on logistical and maintenance requirements for AA unit.
 5. Employs operational safety procedures.
 6. Trains and supervises platoon personnel in the performance of tasks which support battalion training objectives.
 7. Responsible for overall preventative and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.
 8. Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.
-

BILLET: Headquarters and Service Company Commander

The headquarters and service (H&S) company commander provides the AA battalion commander the means to affect command and control of the battalion. Through his subordinate platoons and sections, the H&S company commander provides maintenance, communications, administrative, medical, supply, and other service support functions to the AA battalion commander.

Core Capabilities:

1. Serves as headquarters commandant for AA battalion.
2. Advises the supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit.
3. Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for AA unit.
4. Employs operational safety procedures.
5. Responsible for the overall preventative maintenance and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.
6. Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.
7. Supervises maintenance related activities of AA unit.
8. Maintains the welfare and discipline of a company.
9. Coordinates the staff sections in the performance of tasks which support battalion training objectives.

BILLET: Assistant Operations Officer

Junior 1803 officer in battalion operations section. Assists operations officer in duties.

Core Capabilities:

1. Serves as watch officer in battalion COC.
2. Assists the operations officer in supervising unit and personnel training.
3. Assists the operations officer with coordinating with Naval personnel for amphibious operations.
4. Monitors the battalion TEEP.

BILLET: Battalion Operations Officer

Field grade or senior company grade officer responsible for coordinating all battalion training and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the battalion commander's intent.

Core Capabilities:

1. Assumes staff responsibility for organization, training and tactical operations of an assault amphibian battalion.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

2. Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising tactical aspects of logistical support of units.
 3. Responsible for determining priorities for allocation of personnel, weapons, equipment and ammunition.
 4. Makes operational planning recommendations to the battalion commander.
 5. Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.
-

BILLET: Battalion Logistics Officer

Field grade or senior company grade officer responsible for coordinating all battalion logistical requirements and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the battalion commander's intent.

Core Capabilities:

1. Assumes staff responsibility for determining logistical requirements, support, and operations for an AA battalion.
 2. Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising logistical support of AA units.
 3. Makes operational planning recommendations to the battalion commander.
 4. Coordinates with Naval personnel for embarkation of AA unit with amphibious shipping.
-

BILLET: Battalion Executive Officer

Second most senior 1803 officer in the battalion. Assumes command in battalion commander's absence. Responsible for managing and coordinating the battalion staff and administrative tasks.

Core Capabilities:

1. Coordinates all action of the battalion staff.
 2. Supervises staff planning process.
 3. Ensures battalion reports are made as required to higher and adjacent commanders.
 4. Maintains information flow to battalion commander.
-

BILLET: AA Battalion Commander

The AA battalion commander serves as a special staff officer to the Commanding General of the Marine Division. The battalion commander also directs the maintenance and logistic trains organic to the battalion to support operations as directed by the Commanding General of the Marine Division. The assault amphibian battalion has the ability to function as a maneuver element headquarters when provided augmentation from higher headquarters.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Core Capabilities:

1. Advises supported unit commander on employment of AA unit.
 2. Responsible for the vehicle preventive and corrective maintenance.
 3. Responsible for the training of personnel in the performance of tasks which support division training objectives.
 4. Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for AA unit.
 5. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of the battalion.
 6. Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for AA unit.
 7. Directs organic combat training and logistical operations in support of subordinate units.
 8. Leads assault amphibian battalion as an independent maneuver element.
-

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

18X3 BASIC ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN

APPENDIX D

INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS

Purpose:

MOS 18X3 pertains to all assault amphibians, enlisted and officers. To decrease pages while maintaining clarity in this manual, events that enlisted and officer performed at the basic level were put into this chapter. An example is "Operate the AAV." This task is taught at formal school and performed by all Assault Amphibians, enlisted and officers.

Administrative Note

T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has a 4-4-4 digit identifier. The first four digits represent the occupational field. "18X3" pertains to the entire Assault Amphibian occupational field for individuals. The second four digits represent the functional or duty area. The last four digits represent the level, duty area, and identifier number of the event. Every individual event has an identifier number from 001 to 099. The duty area in this appendix is the following:

CORE - Core skill taught at Formal School to both 1833s and 1803s.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CORE-1010 Complete Individual Surf Qualification

Billet: Basic Assault Amphibian

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a life jacket, white T-shirt, utility trousers, swim buddy, and placed 1000 meters from the beach line with an AAV.

Standard:

By disembarking the AAV in a safe manner, swimming from the drop point to the breakers, and negotiating the surf to the beach.

Performance Steps:

1. Disembark stationary AAV into water when signaled from crew chief or designated personnel.
2. Swim away from AAV to safe distance.
3. Swim to shoreline with swim buddy.
4. Negotiate breakers.

Related CTS:

18X3-AMPH-6104 Conduct Surf Survival Training

Reference(s):

AAV Common SOP

Support Requirements:

Range(s)/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

Other Units/Personnel: AA Unit

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CORE-1012 Perform AAV Operational Safety Procedures

Billet: Basic Assault Amphibian

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

Follow operational safety procedures to reduce the risks associated with high risk tasks.

Condition:

Given an AA unit conducting operational safety procedures and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references.

Performance Steps:

1. Give orientation and safety brief to all embarked personnel in assembly area prior to the conduct of active operations.
2. Secure all items in the troop compartment of the vehicle to prevent injury.
3. Verify that all items for recovery operations, water and land, are serviceable and properly stowed on the vehicle.
4. Verify that all life jackets are serviceable and worn during water operations.
5. Verify that all embarked personnel remain seated, wear helmet and flak jacket, during operations.
6. Verify that all dismounted personnel maintain minimum safe distance from vehicles and are visible to the crew at all times.
7. Ground guide AAV in congested or limited visibility conditions.
8. Verify that cargo and ammunition are properly loaded and secured.

Related CTS:

18X3-OFF -5776 Conduct Dismount Point Activities

18X3-CMND-5206 Maintain a Ground Safety Program

18X3-CSS -3355 Refuel an AAV

18X3-AMPH-3143 Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/Sinking AAV

18X3-AMPH-4144 Recover Disabled AAV in the Water Using Other AAVs

Reference(s):

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

MCO 3500.27 Operational Risk Management

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CORE-1022 Operate AAV Communication Equipment

Billet: Basic Assault Amphibian

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AAV, radios with frequencies, and appropriate collateral materials.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references.

Performance Steps:

1. Prepare the communications equipment for operations.
2. Operate the Combat Vehicle Crewman's helmet.
3. Operate the vehicle intercom system.
4. Operate the audio frequency amplifier.
5. Operate the receiver/transmitters in plain and covered mode.
6. Operate the receiver/transmitters in frequency hopping and single channel mode.
7. Prepare inter-AAV wire communications (Gun Loop).
8. Operate and troubleshoot MSQ 115 system.
9. Operate the position location systems.
10. Transmit on designated command and control circuits when directed by the supported unit commander.
11. Secure communication equipment from operation.
12. Operate the crew's radios.
13. Operate the vehicle intercom system.
14. Operate static telephone lines when in a static situation.
14. Secure communications equipment from operation.
15. Assist embarked staff on MSQ 115 system operations.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-CMND-7242 Control Radio Communications
- 18X3-AMPH-3132 Perform AAV Crew Water Operation Qualification
- 18X3-AMPH-3136 Operate AAV in the Water
- 18X3-AMPH-3142 Conduct Emergency Procedures Afloat

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Reference(s):

TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator's Manual, SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, ICOM

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

TM 11-5810-256-OP-4 Operating Procedures for COMSECEQ TSEC/KY-57 in Tracked Vehicles

Support Requirements:

Equipment: AAVP7A1/RAM RS and AAVC7A1 with all radios operational and installed

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CORE-1031 Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services for the AAV

Billet: Basic Assault Amphibian

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA unit, associated equipment, and the reference.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and reference.

Performance Steps:

1. Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on AAV7A1 family of vehicles.
2. Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on AAV7A1 family of vehicles communications suite.
3. Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on AAV7A1 family of vehicles collateral equipment.

Related CTS:

18X3-MECH-5633 Conduct Tactical Road March

18X3-MECH-635 Conduct Tactical Halt

18X3-OFF -5784 Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization

Reference(s):

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CORE-1042 Prepare AAV Range Card

Billet: Basic Assault Amphibian

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AAV, a sector of fire, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references.

Performance Steps:

1. Indicate the position of the AAV.
2. Indicate key terrain features, range, and elevation.
3. Indicate unit sector of engagement area.
4. Indicate Target Reference Points (TRPs).
5. Indicate friendly Observation Points (OP).
6. Indicate obstacles.
7. Indicate any indirect fire targets, including Final Protective Fire (FPF), if allocated.
8. Indicate position of vehicles or units on immediate flanks.
9. Indicate weapons dead spaces.
10. Indicate date that range card was made.

Related CTS:

18X3-WPNS-3921 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6

18X3-DEF -4409 Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions

Reference(s):

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CORE-1081 Operate the AAV

Billet: Basic Assault Amphibian

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a fully operational, onboard vehicle equipment (OVE) complete AAV, appropriate collateral equipment, and driving area on land and water.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and reference.

Performance Steps:

1. Operate interior system components.
2. Operate external system components.
3. Use OVE.
4. Conduct pre-operations checks.
5. Drive AAV on land.
6. Drive AAV in water.
7. Conduct during operations checks.
8. Conduct post operations checks.
9. Communicate using visual signals.

Related CTS:

18X3-VEH -3838 Start AAV Engine from Outside Power Source
18X3-VEH -3853 Operate AAV on Land
18X3-VEH -3855 Employ Terrain Driving Techniques
18X3-VEH -4839 Tow Start an AAV
18X3-VEH -4845 Recover Disabled AAV
18X3-AMPH-3132 Perform AAV Crew Water Operation Qualification
18X3-AMPH-3136 Operate AAV in the Water
18X3-AMPH-3142 Conduct Emergency Procedures Afloat

Reference(s):

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Range(s)/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CORE-1083 Employ Smoke Generation System

Billet: Basic Assault Amphibian

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given AAV, and an area to operate the smoke generation system.

Standard:

In accordance with the reference.

Related CTS:

18X3-VEH -5827 Employ Smoke Generation System

Reference(s):

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CORE-1086 Perform Installation/Removal of Medium Machine Gun
on AAVC7A1

Billet: Basic Assault Amphibian

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun, AAVC7A1, appropriate collateral equipment, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the references.

Related CTS:

18X3-CMND-4202 Conduct Command Section Operations

Reference(s):

TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1,
AAVC7A1 Supplement TO TM 09674A-10/3

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CORE-1089 Conduct Bore Sighting of Upgunned Weapon Station

Billet: Basic Assault Amphibian

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

Conducting bore sighting ensures vehicle weapon systems will fire accurately.

Condition:

Given an AAV upgunned weapon station with installed M2 HB .50 cal machine gun and a MK-19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun, a bore sighting kit, appropriate collateral equipment, and the reference.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and the reference.

Performance Steps:

1. Position vehicle on level terrain on flat surface and apply parking brake.
2. Install weapons.
3. Conduct minor boresight using parallel method.
4. Conduct minor boresighting using convergin method.
5. Conduct minor boresighting in limited visibility conditions.
6. Conduct major boresighting as required.

Related CTS:

18X3-AMPH-3132 Perform AAV Crew Water Operation Qualification

Reference(s):

TM 10004A-10/1C Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Equipment: AAV Boresighting kit

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CORE-1090 Identify Combat Vehicles and Helicopters

Billet: Basic Assault Amphibian

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a silhouette (frontal or side) of a combat vehicle or helicopter with distinguishing characteristics clearly visible for ten seconds.

Standard:

By correctly identifying a silhouette in 10 seconds.

Performance Steps:

1. Determine the type of vehicle/helicopter.
2. Determine the role of the vehicle/helicopter on the battlefield.
3. Determine main armament.
4. Determine the identifying characteristics of the vehicle/helicopter.
5. State the nomenclature of the vehicle/helicopter.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-OFF -4783 Conduct a Route Reconnaissance
- 18X3-OFF -5767 Conduct Actions on Contact
- 18X3-WPNS-3920 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6
- 18X3-WPNS-3921 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7
- 18X3-WPNS-3922 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8
- 18X3-WPNS-3923 Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification

Reference(s):

- FM 44-30 Visual Aircraft Recognition
- ROC-V Combat Identification CD-ROM

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CORE-1091 Employ Upgunned Weapon Station

Billet: Basic Assault Amphibian

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AAV upgunned weapon station with installed, loaded, and zeroed machine guns, associated collateral equipment, and engagement area.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and the reference.

Performance Steps:

1. Conduct preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the Upgunned Weapon Station (UGWS).
2. Perform pre-operation checks and services of the UGWS.
3. Operate electrical components and switches of the UGWS.
4. Operate manual components.
5. Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on M257 Grenade Launcher System
6. Load M257 Grenade Launcher System.
7. Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System.
8. Apply Failure to Fire Procedures on M257 Grenade Launcher System.
9. Unload M257 Grenade Launcher System.
10. Perform after operations checks of the Upgunned Weapon Systems.
11. Set headspace and timing on M2 HB .50 Cal machine gun.
12. Load M2 HB .50 Cal machine gun.
13. Fire the M2 HB .50 Cal machine gun.
14. Apply failure to fire procedures for M2 HB .50 Cal machine gun.
15. Zero an M2 HB .50 Cal machine gun.
16. Unload M2 HB .50 Cal machine gun.
17. Perform preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on M2 HB .50 Cal machine gun.
18. Load MK-19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
19. Fire the MK-19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
20. Apply failure to fire procedures for MK-19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
21. Zero MK-19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
22. Unload MK-19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
23. Perform preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on MK-

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

- 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
- 24. Identify target.
- 25. Place aiming point or proper range line on center mass of target.
- 26. Engage targets with the Upgunned Weapon Station.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-WPNS-3920 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6
- 18X3-WPNS-3921 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7
- 18X3-WPNS-3922 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8
- 18X3-WPNS-3923 Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification

Reference(s):

TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CORE-1093 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 1

Billet: Basic Assault Amphibian

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

Demonstrate non-firing weapons proficiency on all weapons of the Upgunned Weapon Station in all facets of weaponry.

Condition:

Given an AAV upgunned weapon station, the required ammunition by type and amount, and a range capable of supporting the table.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists in Annex A.

Related CTS:

18X3-WPNS-3920 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6

18X3-WPNS-3921 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7

18X3-WPNS-3922 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8

18X3-WPNS-3923 Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification

Reference(s):

MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1

TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3

TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

Support Requirements:

Ordnance: B472 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, DUMMY 10 rds per crew

Equipment: Written Exam

Other Units/Personnel: Evaluator

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-CORE-1094 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 2

Billet: Basic Assault Amphibian

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

Demonstrate zeroing Upgunned Weapon Station with appropriate weapon to validate boresighting.

Condition:

Given an AAV upgunned weapon station with installed and loaded machine guns, associated collateral equipment, and a range capable of supporting the table.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists in Annex A.

Related CTS:

18X3-WPNS-3920 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6

18X3-WPNS-3921 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7

18X3-WPNS-3922 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8

18X3-WPNS-3923 Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification

Reference(s):

TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1

MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3

Support Requirements:

Range(s)/Training Area: 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range

Ordnance:

A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 Linked, F/M2 40 rds per Marine

B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19 32 rds per Marine

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

1833 ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN CREWMAN

APPENDIX E

INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS

Purpose:

The MOS 1833 individual training appendix pertains to only enlisted assault amphibians. To decrease pages while maintaining clarity in this manual, events that enlisted and officer performed at the basic level were put into the 18X3 chapter. To reference all 1833 ITS, the user must utilize all the ITS in the the MOS 18X3 appendix and this appendix.

Administrative Note

T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has a 4-4-4 digit identifier. The first four digits represent the occupational field. 1833 pertains to the Assault Amphibian enlisted. The second four digits represent the functional or duty area. The last four digits represent the level, duty area, and identifier number of the event. Every individual event has an identifier number from 001 to 099. The duty areas in this appendix are the following:

AULC - Amphibian Unit Leader Course. Core Plus skills taught at the Amphibian Unit Leader Course.

MOJT - Fleet Training (Managed On the Job Training).

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2013 Coordinate Embarkation/Debarcation Plans on Amphibious Shipping with Naval Personnel

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

This task will be conducted normally at the pre-sail conference.

Condition:

Given an AA unit, an Amphibious Objective Area, applicable communication with the assigned amphibious shipping personnel, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that all personnel, equipment, ordnance, and vehicles of the AA unit are safely and securely embarked aboard amphibious shipping.

Performance Steps:

1. Confirm number and type of AAVs.
2. Confirm call signs and frequencies for communication between ship, safety boats, and AA unit.
3. Confirm centerbeach grid coordinates with Naval personnel.
4. Confirm timeline for:
 - a. Set condition One Alpha for AAV/Well deck operations.
 - b. Launch of safety boats.
 - c. Launch of AAVs to ship.
5. Confirm procedures for recovery of disabled AAV with ship.
6. Confirm actions for AAV sinking during movement with ship.
7. Confirm ships plan for depth of water/ballast condition at sill on well deck.
8. Confirm position/angle of stern gate.
9. Confirm positioning of well deck crew and hand and arm signals used by well deck crews for maneuvering AAVs into and inside of the well deck.
10. Confirm AAV positioning within the well deck to provide adequate space for:
 - a. Ship's fire fighting crews.
 - b. Conducting AAV after operations checks and services.
 - c. Conducting required AAV corrective maintenance.
 - d. Movement of embarked troops to and from AAVs.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

- e. Refueling of AAVs within well deck if necessary.
- 11. Attend pre-assault briefing to coordinate debarkation plans with Naval personnel.
- 12. Coordinate time line for launch.
- 13. Coordinate with ship's personnel for procedures in the event of AAV becoming disabled in the well deck during launch.
- 14. Coordinate waterborne control measures.
- 15. Coordinate with ship's personnel for any AAVs or AAV personnel remaining aboard ship.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5137 - Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement
- 18X3-AMPH-5140 - Participate in Amphibious Raid

References:

- JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
- LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
- MCO 3500.27 Operational Risk Management
- MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious and Landing Craft Data Book
- MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations
- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

Support Requirements:

- Range(s)/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
- Other Units/Personnel: Amphibious Shipping

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2016 Develop Surf Observation (SUROB) Report

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

Surf observation report will be conducted and reported, if applicable, prior to waterborne operations. This event will aid the assault amphibian officer in determining waterborne operational conditions and ultimately whether to splash his AA unit or not.

Condition:

Given an Amphibious Objective Area, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that AAV waterborne operations are conducted within the required training surf parameters of 6 feet or less with wave frequency of 10 seconds or more.

Performance Steps:

1. Line Alpha - determine significant breaker height.
2. Line Bravo - determine maximum breaker height.
3. Line Charlie - determine breaker period.
4. Line Delta - determine breaker type.
5. Line Echo - determine breaker angle.
6. Line Foxtrot - determine littoral current.
7. Line Golf - determine depth of surf zone and lines of breakers.
8. Line Hotel - determine miscellaneous information:
 - a. Wind speed and angle.
 - b. Secondary breaker height.
 - c. Debris in the surf zone.
 - d. Sea state.
9. Employ NATO format as required.
10. Translate SUROB into Modified Surf Index (MSI) as required.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5137 - Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement
- 18X3-AMPH-5139 - Participate in Amphibious Assault
- 18X3-AMPH-5140 - Participate in Amphibious Raid
- 18X3-AMPH-5141 - Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-AMPH-6104 - Conduct Surf Survival Training

18X3-MCM -5590 - Conduct Amphibious Breaching

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Range(s)/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious
Forces

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2017 Perform Duties of Wave Commander

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

Wave commander is tactically responsible for movement of wave of AAVs from ship-to-shore. A wave is considered a group of vehicles or boats that land at the same beach at the same time.

Condition:

Given an AA unit, an Amphibious Objective Area, landing diagram, and communication with the Primary Control Ship.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that the AAV wave touches down at the specific beach at the specific time in the prescribed formation.

Performance Steps:

1. Direct formation of wave of vehicles.
2. Communicate with Primary Control Shipping for AA unit pace and placement in the boat lane.
3. Verify that vehicles are in proper sequence to ensure tactical unity.
4. Direct waterborne movement.
5. Maintain vehicle intervals and distances.
6. Report when vehicles have landed at the beach.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5137 - Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement
- 18X3-AMPH-5138 - Conduct Amphibious Demonstration
- 18X3-AMPH-5139 - Participate in Amphibious Assault
- 18X3-MCM -5590 - Conduct Amphibious Breaching

References:

- MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious and Landing Craft Data Book
- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
- MCWP 3-31.5 (FMFM 1-8) Ship-To-Shore Movement

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Support Requirements:

Range(s)/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

Other Units/Personnel: Amphibious Shipping

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2025 Navigate in an AAV

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

While embarked aboard an AAV, and given a map, an Area of Operations, and navigational devices.

Standard:

Plot, navigate and locate known points.

Performance Steps:

1. Use terrain features as checkpoints as the AAV moves along the route.
2. Follow the terrain features using terrain association techniques.
3. Determine approximate directions of the various segments of the route.
4. Determine total distance for the route and distance between checkpoints.
6. Look to the rear to familiarize yourself with the view of the terrain if you must retrace the route.
7. Use COMPASS, GPS, TACNAV, PLRS devices to augment navigation, when available.
8. Perform threat analysis to utilize terrain features for cover and concealment, if applicable.
9. Report all control measures to higher headquarters along the route.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5137 - Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement
- 18X3-AMPH-5138 - Conduct Amphibious Demonstration
- 18X3-AMPH-5139 - Participate in Amphibious Assault
- 18X3-AMPH-5140 - Participate in Amphibious Raid
- 18X3-DEF -3409 - Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions
- 18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations
- 18X3-MCM -5590 - Conduct Amphibious Breaching
- 18X3-MECH-5633 - Conduct Tactical Road March
- 18X3-OFF -5771 - Support Infantry Offensive Operations
- 18X3-OFF -5785 - Conduct Spoiling Attack

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

References:

FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation

FM 21-60 Visual Signals

FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2028 Control Radio Communications

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA unit, an operations order, current Communications-Electronic Operating Instruction (CEOI), and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and the references.

Performance Steps:

1. Verify that all elements have the authorized SC frequency, frequency hopping (FH) data and COMSEC instructions input into their radios.
2. Perform Net Control Station duties and open the net.
3. Update FH data using electronic remote fill (ERF), as needed.
4. Conduct late net entry as needed.
5. Enforce standard radio procedures including:
 - a. Use only approved radio/telephone procedures.
 - b. Keep transmission to under 15 seconds.
 - c. Encode and decode all critical messages.
 - d. Use challenge and reply authentication in accordance with CEOI.
 - e. Use lowest possible power settings and directional antennas.
 - f. Submit MIJI reports within five minutes after attempted jamming.
6. Coordinate with supported unit or supported unit communications officer for call signs and frequencies.
7. Distribute daily call signs and frequencies to all stations on net.
8. Establish self as net control, authorizing stations to become operational on net using AAV unit organic communications equipment.
9. Enforce listening silence.
10. Recognize electronic countermeasures (ECM) and implement electronic counter countermeasures (ECCM) under the guidance of the communications officer.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5139 - Participate in Amphibious Assault
- 18X3-AMPH-5141 - Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal
- 18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations
- 18X3-DEF -5411 - Employ Operational Security
- 18X3-MCM -5590 - Conduct Amphibious Breaching
- 18X3-MECH-5633 - Conduct Tactical Road March
- 18X3-OFF -5784 - Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization
- 18X3-OFF -5771 - Support Infantry Offensive Operations
- 18X3-OFF -5773 - Conduct Link Up
- 18X3-OFF -5775 - Conduct Passage of Lines
- 18X3-WPNS-4924 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 9 (Section)
- 18X3-WPNS-4925 - Perform AAV Section Gunnery Qualification
- 18X3-WPNS-5980 - Conduct AA Platoon Live Fire and Manuever Assault

References:

- MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
- MCRP 6-22C Radio Operator's Handbook
- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
- TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Equipment: Frequencies, COMSEC Fill

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-MOJT-2033 Conduct Casualty Evacuation (CASEVAC) in an AAVP7A1

Billet: Crew Chief

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: MOJT

Condition:

Given an AAV, ambulatory and stretcher bound casualties, an operations order, appropriate AAV special mission kit, and the reference.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and reference, so that the combat efficiency of the supported unit is maintained and wounded personnel are relocated to receive available medical attention.

Performance Steps:

1. Load casualties with advice from the unit corpsman.
2. Determine the safest, fastest, smoothest route for the movement.
3. Coordinate casualty transportation to appropriate unit casualty transfer point or aid station in accordance with the operations order.

Related CTS:

18X3-OFF -5784 - Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization

18X3-CSS -5364 - Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2038 Coordinate AA Unit in Preparations for Combat

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

Direct an AA unit to prepare for combat prior to crossing the Line of Departure.

Condition:

Given an AA unit, an assembly area, higher headquarter's operation order, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that the key personnel of the AA unit understand the mission and the AA unit possesses the logistical supplies to accomplish the mission.

Performance Steps:

1. Task organize the unit for preparation.
2. Forecast resupply requirements for sustainment of combat operations.
3. Direct refueling and resupply.
4. Supervise inspection of vehicles.
5. Conduct and supervise walk-through rehearsals.
6. Conduct communication checks.
7. Communicate plan to higher headquarters.

Related CTS:

18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations
18X3-OFF -5784 - Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization
18X3-OFF -5771 - Support Infantry Offensive Operations
18X3-OFF -5772 - Conduct Attack Position Activities

References:

MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-MOJT-2039 Coordinate AA Unit Operation/Deployment Embarkation

Billet: Company Operations Chief

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Initial Training Setting: MOJT

Condition:

Given the task to coordinate a unit's transportation requirement, the operation order, listing of supplies, equipment, and personnel, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references.

Performance Steps:

1. Provide input for load planning of AA unit.
2. Assist in developing plans to embark AA unit.
3. Inspect unit embarkation preparations.
4. Coordinate embarkation of AA Unit onto land transportation.
5. Coordinate embarkation of AAVs onto land transportation.
6. Coordinate embarkation of AA Unit onto aircraft.
7. Coordinate embarkation of AAVs onto aircraft.
8. Conduct AA unit specific Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPF) operations.

Related CTS:

18X3-CSS -7351 - Embark AAVs Onto Strategic Transportation

18X3-CSS -3349 - Develop Plans to Embark AA Unit

References:

FM 55-9 Unit Air Movement Planning

MCDP 4 Logistics

MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

TO-1C5A-9 USAF Technical Order: Loading Instructions for C5A and C5B Aircraft

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2045 Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a unit, higher headquarters' operations order, and an Area of Operations.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that all subordinate units can effectively cover avenues of approach and the assigned platoon sector of fire.

Performance Steps:

1. Receive unit's sector of fire from higher headquarters' operation order or from leaders reconnaissance, if applicable.
2. Analyze unit and supported unit sector of fires assigned by higher headquarters through METT-T.
3. Determine subordinate unit vehicle areas.
4. Determine sectors of fire for subordinate units.
5. Determine TRPs if not given to aid sectors of fire.
6. Assign sectors of fire to subordinates through map or leader's reconnaissance.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations
- 18X3-DEF -5408 - Prepare AAV Fighting Positions
- 18X3-MECH-5633 - Conduct Tactical Road March
- 18X3-MECH-5635 - Conduct Tactical Halt
- 18X3-MECH-5636 - Employ Coil Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5642 - Cross a River
- 18X3-MECH-5656 - Employ Traveling
- 18X3-MECH-5657 - Employ Traveling Overwatch
- 18X3-MECH-5658 - Employ Bounding Overwatch
- 18X3-MECH-5659 - Cross Danger Area
- 18X3-OFF -5784 - Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization
- 18X3-OFF -5790 - Support Military Operations in Urban Terrain

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

References:

MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)

MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2047 Coordinate AA Unit Fire Plan Sketch with Supported Unit Commander

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA unit's fire plan sketch, higher headquarters' operations order, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that the fire plan sketch maximizes use of the Upgunned Weapon Station through effective coverage of most likely avenues of enemy approach, clear, over-lapping fields of fire, and coverage of dead space in cooperation with organic infantry direct and indirect fire weapons.

Performance Steps:

1. Integrate AA unit fire sketch with associated dismounted infantry and engineers attached to the company/team.
2. Verify that indirect fire capability of AAVs is used to cover major direct fire dead spaces.
3. Advise supported unit commander on options for the employment of AAV fires:
 - a. As heavy weapons teams in support of associated rifle platoons at AA section level.
 - b. As mounted outposts.
 - c. As mounted reserve force.
 - d. As heavy weapons in direct support of associated squads.

Related CTS:

18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations

18X3-DEF -5408 - Prepare AAV Fighting Positions

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-MOJT-2050 Operate the MK 154 Mine Clearance System

Billet: MCM Crewman

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a MK 154 LMC kit, a trained crew, appropriate collateral equipment, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and the reference.

Performance Steps:

1. Install the MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
2. Conduct Operational Checks of MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
3. Inspect Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System.
4. Install the MK 22 Rocket Motors, MOD 3-4 on MK 154 Launcher on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
5. Load Line Charges into an AAVP7A1/RAM RS Equipped with MK 154 LMC System.
6. Operate the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System.
7. Unload Line Charges from an AAVP7A1/RAM RS Equipped with MK 154 LMC System.
8. Dismount the MK 22 Rocket Motors, MOD 3-4 from MK 154 Launcher on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
9. Remove the MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System from an AAVP7A1/RAM RS.

Related CTS:

18X3-MCM -3506 - Employ MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

18X3-MCM -5590 - Conduct Amphibious Breaching

References:

TM 09962A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Launcher, Mine Clearance Kit, Mark 1 MOD 0

Support Requirements:

Equipment: AAVP7A1/RAM RS, MK154 LMC Kit, and 5-ton lifting source

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-MOJT-2058 Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of MK
154 Mine Clearance System

Billet: MCM Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a AA mine countermeasure unit, higher headquarters' operations order, Area of Operations, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that all MK 154 employment concerns are highlighted and given to the supported unit commander and staff.

Performance Steps:

1. Advise supported unit commander on the capabilities and limitations of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System to support the operation.
2. Advise supported unit commander on the logistical support requirements of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System given the planned operation.
3. Advise supported unit commander on the possible courses of action for employment of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System in support of the operation.

Related CTS:

18X3-MCM -5585 - Breach Obstacle

18X3-MCM -5590 - Conduct Amphibious Breaching

References:

FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations

FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration

MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data

MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

MCWP 3-17.3 (FMFM 13-7) MAGTF Breaching Operations

MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

TM 09962A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Launcher, Mine Clearance Kit, Mark
1 MOD 0

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-MOJT-2059 Coordinate Mine Countermeasures Operations with Supported Unit

Billet: MCM Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA Mine Countermeasure unit, Area of Operations, higher headquarters' operations order, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that all MK 154 employment concerns are highlighted and given to the supported unit commander and staff.

Performance Steps:

1. Coordinate employment of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System in support of mobility operations.
2. Coordinate employment of AAVs in construction, observation, and suppression of obstacles in support of countermobility operations.
3. Coordinate with supported unit for engineering support required by AA units as part of survivability operations.

Related CTS:

18X3-MCM -5585 - Breach Obstacle

18X3-MCM -5589 - Participate in Deliberate Breach

References:

FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations

FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration

MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data

MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

MCWP 3-17.3 (FMFM 13-7) MAGTF Breaching Operations

MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action

TM 09962A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Launcher, Mine Clearance Kit, Mark 1 MOD 0

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2061 Conduct Map Reconnaissance

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a map and an Area of Operations.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that concerns for tactical planning with respect to terrain are highlighted.

Performance Steps:

1. Orient map and identify the area of operation.
2. Identify graphic control measures on the map.
3. Conduct terrain analysis.
4. Identify available routes of travel.
5. Identify known and planned friendly positions.
6. Mark known and suspected enemy positions on the map.

Related CTS:

18X3-MECH-5633 - Conduct Tactical Road March

18X3-OFF -5783 - Conduct a Route Reconnaissance

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation

FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2062 Conduct Terrain Analysis

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a map, Area of Operations, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that concerns for tactical planning with respect to terrain are highlighted.

Performance Steps:

1. Define the Battlespace.
2. Determine key features in the Area of Operations.
3. Determine local weather and its effect on operations.
4. Identify GO/SLOW GO/NO GO areas for AAVs.

References:

FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation

FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis

MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2063 Conduct Threat Analysis

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given higher headquarters' operations order, other intelligence documents, and an Area of Operations.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that concerns for tactical planning with respect to the enemy are highlighted.

Performance Steps:

1. Determine enemy order of battle.
2. Determine enemy composition and disposition.
3. Determine enemy capabilities and limitations.
4. Determine enemy's most probable course of action.
5. Determine enemy's most dangerous course of action.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-CMND-7217 - Conduct Marine Corps Planning Process
- 18X3-CMND-7219 - Develop Scheme of Intelligence Support
- 18X3-DEF -5408 - Prepare AAV Fighting Positions
- 18X3-MCM -5589 - Participate in Deliberate Breach
- 18X3-MECH-5641 - Conduct Riverine Operations
- 18X3-MECH-5642 - Cross a River
- 18X3-OFF -5790 - Support Military Operations in Urban Terrain

References:

- MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
- MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action
- ROC-V Combat Identification CD-ROM

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2066 Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA unit, mission, and area of operations.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and the references, so that the AA unit minimizes exposure to enemy observation and fire, but maximizes the security and speed of the unit formation while providing suppressive fires.

Performance Steps:

1. Control unit maneuver.
2. Designate target precedence.
3. Designate engagement criteria.
4. Designate weapons orientation.
5. Designate weapons status.
6. Designate pattern of fire.
7. Coordinate unit fire and maneuver, as appropriate.
8. Communicate with visual signals.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations
- 18X3-MCM -5585 - Breach Obstacle
- 18X3-MCM -5589 - Participate in Deliberate Breach
- 18X3-MECH-5625 - Employ Column Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5626 - Employ Vee Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5627 - Employ Wedge Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5628 - Employ Line Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5629 - Employ Echelon Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5634 - Employ Herringbone Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5636 - Employ Coil Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5633 - Conduct Tactical Road March
- 18X3-MECH-5641 - Conduct Riverine Operations
- 18X3-MECH-5642 - Cross a River
- 18X3-MECH-5656 - Employ Traveling

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MECH-5657 - Employ Traveling Overwatch
18X3-MECH-5658 - Employ Bounding Overwatch
18X3-MECH-5642 - Cross Danger Area
18X3-OFF -5784 - Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization
18X3-MECH-5764 - Conduct Immediate Action Drills
18X3-OFF -5767 - Conduct Actions on Contact
18X3-OFF -5771 - Support Infantry Offensive Operations
18X3-OFF -5785 - Conduct Spoiling Attack
18X3-OFF -5790 - Support Military Operations in Urban Terrain
18X3-WPNS-4924 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 9
(Section)
18X3-WPNS-4925 - Perform AAV Section Gunnery Qualification
18X3-WPNS-5980 - Conduct AA Platoon Live Fire and Manuever
Assault

References:

FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
FM 21-60 Visual Signals
FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
MCDP 6 Command and Control
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2069 Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAVs

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA unit, higher headquarters' operations order, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that AA unit courses of action are provided for the supported unit commander for developing a scheme of maneuver.

Performance Steps:

1. Analyze the landing plan.
2. Analyze supported unit's mission.
3. Coordinate with supported unit staff for additional information requirements.
4. Advise supported unit commander on AAV movement techniques.
5. Develop a course of action for on UGWS weapons employment in support of mechanized operations.
6. Coordinate communications scheme of maneuver to maximize AAV communications assets.
7. Develop a course of action for AAV employment during limited visibility operations.
8. Develop a course of action for AAV employment in offensive operations.
9. Develop a course of action for AAV employment in defensive operations.
10. Develop a course of action for AAV employment in nuclear, biological, or chemical environments.
11. Advise the supported unit commander and his staff on the Combat Service Support requirements for the AA unit.
11. Develop a course of action for AAV employment in amphibious operations.
12. Coordinate Embarkation of Personnel Aboard AAVs.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Related CTS:

18X3-AMPH-5139 - Participate in Amphibious Assault
18X3-AMPH-5140 - Participate in Amphibious Raid
18X3-AMPH-5141 - Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal
18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations
18X3-OFF -5771 - Support Infantry Offensive Operations
18X3-OFF -5773 - Conduct Link Up
18X3-OFF -5775 - Conduct Passage of Lines
18X3-OFF -5776 - Conduct Dismounted Point Activities
18X3-OFF -4787 - Support a Mechanized Patrol
18X3-OFF -5790 - Support Military Operations in Urban Terrain

References:

FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
MCDP 6 Command and Control
MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Graphics
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action
TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-MOJT-2082 Prepare AAV for Night/Limited Visibility Operations

Billet: Crew Chief

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: MOJT

Condition:

Given AAV with crew, and orders to conduct operations during times of darkness.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and the reference.

Performance Steps:

1. Install night vision device in driver's station.
2. Conduct pre-operations checks on Upgunned Weapon Station sight for night operations.
3. Install blackout curtains.
4. Place all dome lights in the off or blue/green light position.
5. Mount headlights.
6. Mount chemlights or other required marking devices.

References:

TM 09674A-10/3 AAVP7A1 Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibian Vehicle, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2084 Coordinate Recovery of Disabled AAV

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA unit and a disabled or mired AAV.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and the references.

Performance Steps:

1. Reconnoiter area.
2. Establish security.
3. Estimate the situation.
4. Recover a disabled AAV on land.
5. Recover a disabled AAV in the water.
6. Recover a mired AAV.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-3143 - Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/Sinking AAV
- 18X3-AMPH-4144 - Recover Disabled AAV in the Water Using Other AAVs
- 18X3-VEH -4839 - Tow Start an AAV
- 18X3-VEH -4841 - Tow AAV on Land
- 18X3-VEH -4845 - Recover Disabled AAV
- 18X3-AMPH-3142 - Conduct Emergency Procedures Afloat

References:

- MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations
- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
- TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2085 Monitor Unit Maintenance

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a unit's T/O&E and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and the references, so that combat readiness for AAV7A1 family of vehicles and associated equipment is no less than 80 percent.

Performance Steps:

1. Monitor daily process reports.
2. Monitor LM2 reports.
3. Coordinate routine reconciliation with maintenance and supply activities.
4. Implement a preventive maintenance inspection program.

References:

Applicable TM-10

AR 25-30 Index of Army Publications and Blank Forms

FED LOG Federal Logistics Data on Compact Disk

FMFRP 4-15 Commanders Guide to Maintenance

IL Identification List

LO/LI Applicable Lubrication Order or Instruction

MCO 4790.18 CPAC Program

MCO 4855.10 Quality Deficiency Report

MCO 5100.8 Marine Corps Ground Occupational Safety and Health (OSH) Program

MCO P4400.150 Consumer Level Policy Manual

MCO P4400.82 MIMMS Controlled Item Management Manual

MCO P4790.1 MIMMS Introduction Manual

MCO P4790.2 Marine Corps Integrated Maintenance Management System (MIMMS) Field Procedures Manual

MCO P4790.3 MIMMS Depot Policy Manual

MCO P5090.2 Environmental Compliance and Protection Manual

MCO P5215.17 The USMC Technical Publications System

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

MHIF Master Header Information File
MSDS Material Safety Data Sheets
NAVMC 2692 Unit Safety Program Management Manual
SL-1-2/SL-1-3 Index of Publications Stocked by the USMC
SL-3 Components List
SL-4 06697A Rear Area Operations
SL-6 MCSL Applications List
TI 4710-14/1 Replacement and Evacuation Program
TI 4731-14/1 Marine Corps Participation in the Joint Oil Analysis Program
TM 10209-10/1 Use and Care of Hand Tools & Measuring Tools
TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
TM 4795-12/1 Organizational Corrosion Prevention and Control Procedures for USMC Equipment (CD ROM)
TM 9-2300-422-23&P Army Oil Analysis Sampling Values Army Oil Analysis Program Nonaeronautical Equipment
TM Equipment Technical Manual

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-MOJT-2095 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 3

Billet: Crew Chief

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: MOJT

Description:

Demonstrate basic Upgunned Weapon Station engagement skills.

Condition:

Given an AAV upgunned weapon station with installed and loaded machine guns, associated collateral equipment, and a range capable of supporting the table.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists in Annex A contained within this manual.

Related CTS:

18X3-WPNS-3920 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6

18X3-WPNS-3921 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7

18X3-WPNS-3922 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8

18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification

References:

MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3

TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1

TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

Support Requirements:

Range(s)/Training Area: 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range

Ordnance:

A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2 160 rds per crew

B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19 88 rds per crew

Other Units/Personnel: Evaluator

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-MOJT-2096 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 4

Billet: Crew Chief

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: MOJT

Description:

Demonstrate individual basic Upgunned Weapon Station gunnery in NBC environment.

Condition:

Given an AAV upgunned weapon station with installed and loaded machine guns, associated collateral equipment, and a range capable of supporting the table.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists in Annex A contained within this manual.v

Related CTS:

18X3-WPNS-3920 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6

18X3-WPNS-3921 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7

18X3-WPNS-3922 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8

18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification

References:

MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

Support Requirements:

Ordnance:

A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2 40 rds per crew

B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19 24 rds per crew

Other Units/Personnel: Evaluator

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-MOJT-2097 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 5

Billet: Crew Chief

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: MOJT

Description:

Demonstrate basic Upgunned Weapon Station gunnery at night.

Condition:

Given an AAV upgunned weapon station with installed and loaded machine guns, associated collateral equipment, and a range capable of supporting the table.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists in Annex A contained within this manual.

Related CTS:

18X3-WPNS-3920 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6

18X3-WPNS-3921 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7

18X3-WPNS-3922 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8

18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification

References:

MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1

TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

Support Requirements:

Range(s)/Training Area: 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range

Ordnance:

A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2 100 rds per crew

B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19 32 rds per crew

Other Units/Personnel: Evaluator

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1833-AULC-2098 Evaluate Individual AAV Gunnery Training Qualification

Billet: Section Leader

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given evaluation materials, personnel roster, appropriate equipment, and the AAV Gunnery Table Checklist.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Checklists in Annex A contained within this manual.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-WPNS-3920 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6
- 18X3-WPNS-3921 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7
- 18X3-WPNS-3922 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8
- 18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification
- 18X3-WPNS-3924 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 9
- 18X3-WPNS-3925 - Perform AAV Section Gunnery Qualification

References:

- MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
- TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3
- TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1
- TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1
- TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

Support Requirements:

Other Units/Personnel: AA Unit conducting AAV Crew or Section Gunnery Qualification training

This page left intentionally blank.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

1803 ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN OFFICER

APPENDIX F

INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS

Purpose:

The MOS 1803 individual training appendix pertains to only assault amphibians officers. To decrease pages while maintaining clarity in this manual, events that enlisted and officer performed at the basic level were put into the 18X3 chapter. To reference all 1803 ITSS, the user must utilize all the ITSS in the the MOS 18X3 appendix and this appendix.

Administrative Notes:

T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has a 4-4-4 digit identifier. The first four digits represent the occupational field. 1803 pertains to the Assault Amphibian officer. The second four digits represent the functional or duty area. The last four digits represent the level, duty area, and identifier number of the event. Every individual event has an identifier number from 001 to 099. The duty areas in this appendix are the following:

AAOC - Assault Amphibian Officer Course. Core skills not listed in the MOS 18X3 appendix that are taught at Formal School only to 1803s.

MOJT - Fleet Training (Managed On the Job Training).

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1013 Coordinate Embarkation/Debarcation Plans on
Amphibious Shipping with Naval Personnel

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

This task will be conducted normally at the pre-sail conference.

Condition:

Given an AA unit, an Amphibious Objective Area, applicable communication with the assigned amphibious shipping personnel, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that all personnel, equipment, ordnance, and vehicles of the AA unit are safely and securely embarked aboard amphibious shipping.

Performance Steps:

1. Confirm number and type of AAVs.
2. Confirm call signs and frequencies for communication between ship, safety boats, and AA unit.
3. Confirm centerbeach grid coordinates with Naval personnel.
4. Confirm timeline for:
 - a. Set condition One Alpha for AAV/Well deck operations.
 - b. Launch of safety boats.
 - c. Launch of AAVs to ship.
5. Confirm procedures for recovery of disabled AAV with ship.
6. Confirm actions for AAV sinking during movement with ship.
7. Confirm ships plan for depth of water/ballast condition at sill on well deck.
8. Confirm position/angle of stern gate.
9. Confirm positioning of well deck crew and hand and arm signals used by well deck crews for maneuvering AAVs into and inside of the well deck.
10. Confirm AAV positioning within the well deck to provide adequate space for:
 - a. Ship's fire fighting crews.
 - b. Conducting AAV after operations checks and services.
 - c. Conducting required AAV corrective maintenance.
 - d. Movement of embarked troops to and from AAVs.
 - e. Refueling of AAVs within well deck if necessary.
11. Attend pre-assault briefing to coordinate debarcation plans with

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Naval personnel.

12. Coordinate time line for launch.
13. Coordinate with ship's personnel for procedures in the event of AAV becoming disabled in the well deck during launch.
14. Coordinate waterborne control measures.
15. Coordinate with ship's personnel for any AAVs or AAV personnel remaining aboard ship.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5137 - Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement
- 18X3-AMPH-5140 - Participate in Amphibious Raid

References:

- MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious and Landing Craft Data Book
- MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations
- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

Support Requirements:

- Range(s)/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
- Other Units/Personnel: Amphibious Shipping

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1016 Develop Surf Observation (SUROB) Report

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

Surf observation report will be conducted and reported, if applicable, prior to waterborne operations. This event will aid the assault amphibian officer in determining waterborne operational conditions and ultimately whether to splash his AA unit or not.

Condition:

Given an Amphibious Objective Area, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that AAV waterborne operations are conducted within the required training surf parameters of 6 feet or less with wave frequency of 10 seconds or more.

Performance Steps:

1. Line Alpha - determine significant breaker height.
2. Line Bravo - determine maximum breaker height.
3. Line Charlie - determine breaker period.
4. Line Delta - determine breaker type.
5. Line Echo - determine breaker angle.
6. Line Foxtrot - determine littoral current.
7. Line Golf - determine depth of surf zone and lines of breakers.
8. Line Hotel - determine miscellaneous information:
 - a. Wind speed and angle.
 - b. Secondary breaker height.
 - c. Debris in the surf zone.
 - d. Sea state.
9. Employ NATO format as required.
10. Translate SUROB into Modified Surf Index (MSI) as required.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5137 - Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement
- 18X3-AMPH-5139 - Participate in Amphibious Assault
- 18X3-AMPH-5140 - Participate in Amphibious Raid
- 18X3-AMPH-5141 - Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal
- 18X3-AMPH-6104 - Conduct Surf Survival Training
- 18X3-MCM -5590 - Conduct Amphibious Breaching

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Range(s)/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious
Forces

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1017 Perform Duties of Wave Commander

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

Wave commander is tactically responsible for movement of wave of AAVs from ship-to-shore. A wave is considered a group of vehicles or boats that land at the same beach at the same time.

Condition:

Given an AA unit, an Amphibious Objective Area, landing diagram, and communication with the Primary Control Ship.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that the AAV wave touches down at the specific beach at the specific time in the prescribed formation.

Performance Steps:

1. Direct formation of wave of vehicles.
2. Communicate with Primary Control Shipping for AA unit pace and placement in the boat lane.
3. Verify that vehicles are in proper sequence to ensure tactical unity.
4. Direct waterborne movement.
5. Maintain vehicle intervals and distances.
6. Report when vehicles have landed at the beach.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5137 - Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement
- 18X3-AMPH-5138 - Conduct Amphibious Demonstration
- 18X3-AMPH-5139 - Participate in Amphibious Assault
- 18X3-MCM -5590 - Conduct Amphibious Breaching

References:

- MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious and Landing Craft Data Book
- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
- MCWP 3-31.5 (FMFM 1-8) Ship-To-Shore Movement

Support Requirements:

- Range(s)/Training Area: 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
- Other Units/Personnel: Amphibious Shipping

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-MOJT-2018 Assist in Developing the Landing Plan

Billet: AA Battalion Operations Officer

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: MOJT

Condition:

Given an AA unit, higher headquarters' operations order, a list of available amphibious ship platforms, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that support the concept of operations ashore maximizes AAV boat spaces, facilitates troop embarkation aboard AAVs, and provides logistical support ashore with respect to AA unit employment.

Performance Steps:

1. Conduct mission analysis of supported unit's operations order and provide appropriate input.
2. Determine assault amphibian lift requirements for assault elements, scheduled waves, on-call waves, and nonscheduled waves.
3. Review Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the number and periods of availability for each type of AAV assigned to the operation.
4. Determine landing force lift requirements for the ship-to-shore movement in coordination with a review of the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table, Helicopter Availability Table, and the Landing Craft Availability Table.
5. Consider enemy capabilities to counter surface and/or air assaults.
6. Allow flexibility of on-call and nonscheduled waves.
7. Assign elements to one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
8. Allocate assets for use by subordinate elements, and ensure that the proposed Landing Diagram, Assault Schedule, and Landing Sequence Table are developed concurrently and are mutually compatible.
9. Develop Serial Assignment Table based on task organization for the landing.
10. Develop Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table that is coordinated with affected units.
11. Develop Assault Landing Table and the Serial Assignment Table ensure that proper coordination with appropriate command element.
12. Provide input for Approach Schedule.
13. Develop Debarkation Schedule in coordination with Naval personnel.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Related CTS:

18X3-AMPH-7133 - Assist in Developing the Landing Plan
18X3-AMPH-7137 - Analyze Landing Plan

References:

MCRP 3-31B (FMFRP 1-18) Amphibious and Landing Craft Data Book
MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Graphics
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCWP 3-17.3 (FMFM 13-7) MAGTF Breaching Operations
MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zones Operations
MCWP 3-31.5 (FMFM 1-8) Ship-To-Shore Movement
MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action
MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
NWP 22-3 Ship-to-Shore Movement

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1025 Navigate in an AAV

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

While embarked aboard an AAV, and given a map, an Area of Operations, and navigational devices.

Standard:

Plot, navigate and locate known points.

Performance Steps:

1. Use terrain features as checkpoints as the AAV moves along the route.
2. Follow the terrain features using terrain association techniques.
3. Determine approximate directions of the various segments of the route.
4. Determine total distance for the route and distance between checkpoints.
6. Look to the rear to familiarize yourself with the view of the terrain if you must retrace the route.
7. Use COMPASS, GPS, TACNAV, PLRS devices to augment navigation.
8. Perform threat analysis to utilize terrain features for cover and concealment, if applicable.
9. Report all control measures to higher headquarters along the route.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5137 - Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement
- 18X3-AMPH-5138 - Conduct Amphibious Demonstration
- 18X3-AMPH-5139 - Participate in Amphibious Assault
- 18X3-AMPH-5140 - Participate in Amphibious Raid
- 18X3-DEF -3409 - Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions
- 18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations
- 18X3-MCM -5590 - Conduct Amphibious Breaching
- 18X3-MECH-5633 - Conduct Tactical Road March
- 18X3-OFF -5771 - Support Infantry Offensive Operations
- 18X3-OFF -5785 - Conduct Spoiling Attack

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1028 Control Radio Communications

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA unit, an operations order, current Communications-Electronic Operating Instruction (CEOI), and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and the references.

Performance Steps:

1. Verify that all elements have the authorized SC frequency, frequency hopping (FH) data and COMSEC instructions input into their radios.
2. Perform Net Control Station duties and open the net.
3. Update FH data using electronic remote fill (ERF), as needed.
4. Conduct late net entry as needed.
5. Enforce standard radio procedures including:
 - a. Use only approved radio/telephone procedures.
 - b. Keep transmission to under 15 seconds.
 - c. Encode and decode all critical messages.
 - d. Use challenge and reply authentication in accordance with CEOI.
 - e. Use lowest possible power settings and directional antennas.
 - f. Submit MIJI reports within five minutes after attempted jamming.
6. Coordinate with supported unit or supported unit communications officer for call signs and frequencies.
7. Distribute daily call signs and frequencies to all stations on net.
8. Establish self as net control, authorizing stations to become operational on net using AAV unit organic communications equipment.
9. Enforce listening silence.
10. Recognize electronic countermeasures (ECM) and implement electronic counter countermeasures (ECCM) under the guidance of the communications officer.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5139 - Participate in Amphibious Assault
- 18X3-AMPH-5141 - Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal
- 18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations
- 18X3-DEF -5411 - Employ Operational Security

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-MCM -5590 - Conduct Amphibious Breaching
18X3-MECH-5633 - Conduct Tactical Road March
18X3-OFF -5784 - Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization
18X3-OFF -5771 - Support Infantry Offensive Operations
18X3-OFF -5773 - Conduct Link Up
18X3-OFF -5775 - Conduct Passage of Lines
18X3-WPNS-4924 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 9
(Section)
18X3-WPNS-4925 - Perform AAV Section Gunnery Qualification
18X3-WPNS-5980 - Conduct AA Platoon Live Fire and Manuever
Assault

References:

MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
MCRP 6-22C Radio Operator's Handbook
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

Support Requirements:

Equipment: Frequencies, COMSEC Fill

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1029 Perform Duties as Special Staff Officer

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

In addition to advising supported unit commander of AAV operations, this task aids the assault amphibian officer when acting as liaison officer to infantry, MAGTF, or joint staffs.

Condition:

Given a supported unit and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that the supported unit commander is provided all necessary information and communication to supporting AA units to plan, coordinate, and conduct missions with AAVs.

Performance Steps:

1. Advise on assignment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAV) to various classes of shipping based on the ship's carrying capacity; location of personnel, equipment, and supplies to be lifted; and employment ashore.
2. Advise on optimum distances from AAV standpoint from LD. Amphibious vehicle launching circle to the line of departure LD to beach.
3. Advise on techniques for discharging assault troops on the beach, to include use of assault amphibious vehicles in projected mechanized operations ashore.
4. Advise on employment of assault amphibious vehicles in transfer operations and the overall conduct of such operations, if contemplated.
5. Advise on optimum assault amphibious vehicle formations and timing of assault amphibious vehicle waves.
8. Assist the landing support officer in planning for combat service support employment of assault amphibious units.
9. Coordinate all aspects of assault amphibious vehicle employment with Naval control groups and ships involved with assault amphibious vehicle operations.
10. Advise on maintenance requirements for assault amphibian units, to include location of maintenance areas ashore, assignment of maintenance personnel to higher echelon maintenance units, phasing ashore spare parts, and probable breakdown rates.
11. Advise on requirement of assault amphibian units for fuel, oil, and other lubricants during operations ashore. Coordination with G-4

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

on planning for assault amphibian unit assistance in fuel resupply by use of tanker trucks organic to the unit and fuel-ferrying assemblies transported in assault amphibious vehicles.

12. Assist in planning for employment of AAVC7A1 vehicles as command posts, observation posts, etc.

13. Assist in planning for employment of planning for employment of assault amphibious vehicles in special operations such as river crossings, jungle operations, and mountain operations.

14. Advise on employment of signals, marker devices, etc., for assault amphibious vehicle control during night landings and operations conducted under cover of darkness.

15. Advise on safety requirements when personnel are to be embarked in assault amphibious vehicles and recommending training programs for units to be embarked.

Related CTS:

18X3-AMPH-7133 - Assist in Developing the Landing Plan

18X3-AMPH-7137 - Analyze Landing Plan

18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations

18X3-OFF -5771 - Support Infantry Offensive Operations

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

MCWP 6-2 MAGTF Command and Control Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1033 Conduct Casualty Evacuation (CASEVAC) in an AAVP7A1

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AAV, ambulatory and stretcher bound casualties, an operations order, appropriate AAV special mission kit.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps, so that the combat efficiency of the supported unit is maintained and wounded personnel are relocated to receive available medical attention.

Performance Steps:

1. Load casualties with advice from the unit corpsman.
2. Determine the safest, fastest, smoothest route for the movement.
3. Coordinate casualty transportation to appropriate unit casualty transfer point or aid station in accordance with the operations order.

Related CTS:

18X3-OFF -5784 - Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization

18X3-CSS -5364 - Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1038 Coordinate AA Unit in Preparations for Combat

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA unit, an assembly area, higher headquarter's operation order, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that the key personnel of the AA unit understand the mission and the AA unit possesses the logistical supplies to accomplish the mission.

Performance Steps:

1. Task organize the unit for preparation.
2. Forecast resupply requirements for sustainment of combat operations.
3. Direct resupply.
4. Supervise inspection of vehicles.
5. Conduct and supervise walk-through rehearsals.
6. Conduct communication checks.
7. Communicate plan to higher headquarters.

Related CTS:

18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations
18X3-OFF -5784 - Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization
18X3-OFF -5771 - Support Infantry Offensive Operations
18X3-OFF -5772 - Conduct Attack Position Activities

References:

MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-MOJT-2039 Coordinate AA Unit Operation/Deployment Embarkation

Billet: AA Battalion Logistics Officer

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Initial Training Setting: MOJT

Condition:

Given the task to coordinate a unit's transportation requirement, the operation order, listing of supplies, equipment, and personnel, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references.

Performance Steps:

1. Provide Input for Load Planning of AA Unit
2. Assist in Developing Plans to Embark AA Unit
3. Inspect Unit Embarkation Preparations
4. Coordinate Embarkation of AA Unit Onto Land Transportation
5. Coordinate Embarkation of AAVs Onto Land Transportation
6. Coordinate Embarkation of AA Unit Onto Aircraft
7. Coordinate Embarkation of AAVs Onto Aircraft
8. Conduct AA Unit Specific Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPF) Operations

Related CTS:

18X3-CSS -7351 - Embark AAVs Onto Strategic Transportation

18X3-CSS -3349 - Develop Plans to Embark AA Unit

References:

MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

TO-1C5A-9 USAF Technical Order: Loading Instructions for C5A and C5B Aircraft

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1045 Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a unit, higher headquarters' operations order, and an Area of Operations.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that all subordinate units can effectively cover avenues of approach and the assigned platoon sector of fire.

Performance Steps:

1. Receive unit's sector of fire from higher headquarters' operation order or from leaders reconnaissance, if applicable.
2. Analyze unit and supported unit sector of fires assigned by higher headquarters through METT-T.
3. Determine subordinate unit vehicle areas.
4. Determine sectors of fire for subordinate units.
5. Determine TRPs if not given to aid sectors of fire.
6. Assign sectors of fire to subordinates through map or leader's reconnaissance.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations
- 18X3-DEF -5408 - Prepare AAV Fighting Positions
- 18X3-MECH-5633 - Conduct Tactical Road March
- 18X3-MECH-5635 - Conduct Tactical Halt
- 18X3-MECH-5636 - Employ Coil Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5642 - Cross a River
- 18X3-MECH-5656 - Employ Traveling
- 18X3-MECH-5657 - Employ Traveling Overwatch
- 18X3-MECH-5658 - Employ Bounding Overwatch
- 18X3-MECH-5659 - Cross Danger Area
- 18X3-OFF -5784 - Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization
- 18X3-OFF -5790 - Support Military Operations in Urban Terrain

References:

- MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1047 Coordinate AA Unit Fire Plan Sketch with Supported Unit Commander

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA unit's fire plan sketch, higher headquarters' operations order, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that the fire plan sketch maximizes use of the Upgunned Weapon Station through effective coverage of most likely avenues of enemy approach, clear, over-lapping fields of fire, and coverage of dead space in cooperation with organic infantry direct and indirect fire weapons.

Performance Steps:

1. Integrate AA unit fire sketch with associated dismounted infantry and engineers attached to the company/team.
2. Verify that indirect fire capability of AAVs is used to cover major direct fire dead spaces.
3. Advise supported unit commander on options for the employment of AAV fires:
 - a. As heavy weapons teams in support of associated rifle platoons at AA section level.
 - b. As mounted outposts.
 - c. As mounted reserve force.
 - d. As heavy weapons in direct support of associated squads.

Related CTS:

18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations

18X3-DEF -5408 - Prepare AAV Fighting Positions

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-MOJT-2050 Operate the MK 154 Mine Clearance System

Billet: MCM Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a MK 154 LMC kit, a trained crew, appropriate collateral equipment, and the reference.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and the reference.

Performance Steps:

1. Install the MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
2. Conduct Operational Checks of MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
3. Inspect Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System.
4. Install the MK 22 Rocket Motors, MOD 3-4 on MK 154 Launcher on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
5. Load Line Charges into an AAVP7A1/RAM RS Equipped with MK 154 LMC System.
6. Operation the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System.
7. Unload Line Charges from an AAVP7A1/RAM RS Equipped with MK 154 LMC System.
8. Dismount the MK 22 Rocket Motors, MOD 3-4 from MK 154 Launcher on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
9. Remove the MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System from an AAVP7A1/RAM RS.

Related CTS:

18X3-MCM -3506 - Employ MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

18X3-MCM -5590 - Conduct Amphibious Breaching

References:

TM 09962A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Launcher, Mine Clearance Kit, Mark 1 MOD 0

Support Requirements:

Equipment: AAVP7A1/RAM RS, MK154 LMC Kit, and 5-ton lifting source

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-MOJT-2058 Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of MK
154 Mine Clearance System

Billet: MCM Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a AA mine countermeasure unit, higher headquarters' operations order, Area of Operations, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that all MK 154 employment concerns are highlighted and given to the supported unit commander and staff.

Performance Steps:

1. Advise supported unit commander on the capabilities and limitations of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System to support the operation.
2. Advise supported unit commander on the logistical support requirements of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System given the planned operation.
3. Advise supported unit commander on the possible courses of action for employment of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System in support of the operation.

Related CTS:

18X3-MCM -5585 - Breach Obstacle

18X3-MCM -5590 - Conduct Amphibious Breaching

References:

MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data

MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

MCWP 3-17.3 (FMFM 13-7) MAGTF Breaching Operations

MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

TM 09962A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Launcher, Mine Clearance Kit, Mark
1 MOD 0

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-MOJT-2059 Coordinate Mine Countermeasures Operations with Supported Unit

Billet: MCM Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA Mine Countermeasure unit, Area of Operations, higher headquarters' operations order, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that all MK 154 employment concerns are highlighted and given to the supported unit commander and staff.

Performance Steps:

1. Coordinate employment of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System in support of mobility operations.
2. Coordinate employment of AAVs in construction, observation, and suppression of obstacles in support of countermobility operations.
3. Coordinate with supported unit for engineering support required by AA units as part of survivability operations.

Related CTS:

18X3-MCM -5585 - Breach Obstacle

18X3-MCM -5589 - Participate in Deliberate Breach

References:

MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data

MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

MCWP 3-17.3 (FMFM 13-7) MAGTF Breaching Operations

MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action

TM 09962A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Launcher, Mine Clearance Kit, Mark 1 MOD 0

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1061 Conduct Map Reconnaissance

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a map and an Area of Operations.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and reference, so that concerns for tactical planning with respect to terrain are highlighted.

Performance Steps:

1. Orient map and identify the area of operation.
2. Identify graphic control measures on the map.
3. Conduct terrain analysis.
4. Identify available routes of travel.
5. Identify known and planned friendly positions.
6. Mark known and suspected enemy positions on the map.

Related CTS:

18X3-MECH-5633 - Conduct Tactical Road March

18X3-OFF -5783 - Conduct a Route Reconnaissance

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1062 Conduct Terrain Analysis

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given a map, Area of Operations, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and reference, so that concerns for tactical planning with respect to terrain are highlighted.

Performance Steps:

1. Define the Battlespace.
2. Determine key features in the Area of Operations.
3. Determine local weather and its effect on operations.

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1063 Conduct Threat Analysis

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given higher headquarters' operations order, other intelligence documents, an Area of Operations, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that concerns for tactical planning with respect to the enemy are highlighted.

Performance Steps:

1. Determine enemy order of battle.
2. Determine enemy composition and disposition.
3. Determine enemy capabilities and limitations.
4. Determine enemy's most probable course of action.
5. Determine enemy's most dangerous course of action.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-CMND-7217 - Conduct Marine Corps Planning Process
- 18X3-CMND-7219 - Develop Scheme of Intelligence Support
- 18X3-DEF -5408 - Prepare AAV Fighting Positions
- 18X3-MCM -5589 - Participate in Deliberate Breach
- 18X3-MECH-5641 - Conduct Riverine Operations
- 18X3-MECH-5642 - Cross a River
- 18X3-OFF -5790 - Support Military Operations in Urban Terrain

References:

- MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
- MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action
- ROC-V Combat Identification CD-ROM

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1066 Control AA Unit Fire and Maneuver

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA unit, mission, and area of operations.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and reference, so that the AA unit minimizes exposure to enemy observation and fire, but maximizes the security and speed of the unit formation while providing suppressive fires.

Performance Steps:

1. Control unit maneuver.
2. Designate target precedence.
3. Designate engagement criteria.
4. Designate weapons orientation.
5. Designate weapons status.
6. Designate pattern of fire.
7. Coordinate unit fire and maneuver.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations
- 18X3-MCM -5585 - Breach Obstacle
- 18X3-MCM -5589 - Participate in Deliberate Breach
- 18X3-MECH-5625 - Employ Column Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5626 - Employ Vee Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5627 - Employ Wedge Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5628 - Employ Line Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5629 - Employ Echelon Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5634 - Employ Herringbone Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5636 - Employ Coil Formation
- 18X3-MECH-5633 - Conduct Tactical Road March
- 18X3-MECH-5641 - Conduct Riverine Operations
- 18X3-MECH-5642 - Cross a River
- 18X3-MECH-5656 - Employ Traveling
- 18X3-MECH-5657 - Employ Traveling Overwatch
- 18X3-MECH-5658 - Employ Bounding Overwatch
- 18X3-MECH-5642 - Cross Danger Area

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

- 18X3-OFF -5784 - Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization
- 18X3-MECH-5764 - Conduct Immediate Action Drills
- 18X3-OFF -5767 - Conduct Actions on Contact
- 18X3-OFF -5771 - Support Infantry Offensive Operations
- 18X3-OFF -5785 - Conduct Spoiling Attack
- 18X3-OFF -5790 - Support Military Operations in Urban Terrain
- 18X3-WPNS-4924 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 9
(Section)
- 18X3-WPNS-4925 - Perform AAV Section Gunnery Qualification
- 18X3-WPNS-5980 - Conduct AA Platoon Live Fire and Manuever
Assault

References:

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1069 Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAVs

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA unit, higher headquarters' operations order, and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that AA unit courses of action are provided for the supported unit commander for developing a scheme of maneuver.

Performance Steps:

1. Analyze the landing plan.
2. Analyze supported unit's mission.
3. Coordinate with supported unit staff for additional information requirements.
4. Advise supported unit commander on AAV movement techniques.
5. Develop a course of action for on UGWS weapons employment in support of mechanized operations.
6. Coordinate communications scheme of maneuver to maximize AAV communications assets.
7. Develop a course of action for AAV employment during limited visibility operations.
8. Develop a course of action for AAV employment in offensive operations.
9. Develop a course of action for AAV employment in defensive operations.
10. Develop a course of action for AAV employment in nuclear, biological, or chemical environments.
11. Advise the supported unit commander and his staff on the Combat Service Support requirements for the AA unit.
11. Develop a course of action for AAV employment in amphibious operations.
12. Coordinate Embarkation of Personnel Aboard AAVs.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-AMPH-5139 - Participate in Amphibious Assault
- 18X3-AMPH-5140 - Participate in Amphibious Raid
- 18X3-AMPH-5141 - Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal
- 18X3-DEF -5401 - Support Infantry Defensive Operations

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

18X3-OFF -5771 - Support Infantry Offensive Operations
18X3-OFF -5773 - Conduct Link Up
18X3-OFF -5775 - Conduct Passage of Lines
18X3-OFF -5776 - Conduct Dismounted Point Activities
18X3-OFF -4787 - Support a Mechanized Patrol
18X3-OFF -5790 - Support Military Operations in Urban Terrain

References:

MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Graphics
MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)
MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations
MCWP 5-1 (FMFM 3-1) Command and Staff Action
TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1084 Coordinate Recovery of Disabled AAV

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 6 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given an AA unit and a disabled or mired AAV and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references.

Performance Steps:

1. Reconnoiter area, establish security, as necessary.
2. Estimate the situation.
3. Recover a disabled AAV on land.
4. Recover a disabled AAV in the water.
5. Recover a mired AAV.

Related CTS:

18X3-AMPH-3143 - Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/Sinking AAV

18X3-AMPH-4144 - Recover Disabled AAV in the Water Using Other AAVs

18X3-VEH -4839 - Tow Start an AAV

18X3-VEH -4841 - Tow AAV on Land

18X3-VEH -4845 - Recover Disabled AAV

18X3-AMPH-3142 - Conduct Emergency Procedures Afloat

References:

MCRP 4-24A (FMFRP 4-19) Vehicle Recovery Operations

MCWP 3-13 Employment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs)

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1085 Monitor Unit Maintenance

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: MOJT

Condition:

Given a unit's T/O&E and the references.

Standard:

In accordance with the performance steps and references, so that combat readiness for AAV7A1 family of vehicles and associated equipment is no less than 80 percent.

Performance Steps:

1. Monitor daily process reports.
2. Monitor LM2 reports.
3. Coordinate routine reconcilliation with maintenance and supply activities.
4. Implement a maintenance inspection program.

References:

MHIF Master Header Information File
MSDS Material Safety Data Sheets
NAVMC 2692 Unit Safety Program Management Manual
SL-1-2/SL-1-3 Index of Publications Stocked by the USMC
SL-3 Components List
SL-4 06697A Rear Area Operations
SL-6 MCSL Applications List
TI 4710-14/1 Replacement and Evacuation Program
TI 4731-14/1 Marine Corps Participation in the Joint Oil Analysis Program
TM 10209-10/1 Use and Care of Hand Tools & Measuring Tools
TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
TM 4795-12/1 Organizational Corrosion Prevention and Control Procedures for USMC Equipment (CD ROM)
TM 9-2300-422-23&P Army Oil Analysis Sampling Values Army Oil Analysis Program Nonaeronautical Equipment
TM Equipment Technical Manual

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1095 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 3

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

Demonstrate basic Upgunned Weapon Station engagement skills.

Condition:

Given an AAV upgunned weapon station with installed and loaded machine guns, associated collateral equipment, and a range capable of supporting the table.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists in Annex A contained within this manual.

Related CTS:

18X3-WPNS-3920 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6

18X3-WPNS-3921 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7

18X3-WPNS-3922 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8

18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification

References:

TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3

TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1

TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

Support Requirements:

Range(s)/Training Area: 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range

Ordnance:

A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2 160 rds per crew

B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19 88 rds per crew

Other Units/Personnel: Evaluator

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1096 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 4

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

Demonstrate individual basic Upgunned Weapon Station gunnery in NBC environment.

Condition:

Given an AAV upgunned weapon station with installed and loaded machine guns, associated collateral equipment, and a range capable of supporting the table.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists in Annex A contained within this manual.

Related CTS:

18X3-WPNS-3920 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6

18X3-WPNS-3921 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7

18X3-WPNS-3922 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8

18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification

References:

MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

Support Requirements:

Ordnance:

A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2 40 rds per crew

B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19 24 rds per crew

Other Units/Personnel: Evaluator

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1097 Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 5

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Description:

Demonstrate basic Upgunned Weapon Station gunnery at night.

Condition:

Given an AAV upgunned weapon station with installed and loaded machine guns, associated collateral equipment, and a range capable of supporting the table.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists in Annex A contained within this manual.

Related CTS:

18X3-WPNS-3920 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6

18X3-WPNS-3921 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7

18X3-WPNS-3922 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8

18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification

References:

TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1

TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40MM, MK-19 Mod 3

TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for the AAVP7A1

TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

Support Requirements:

Range(s)/Training Area: 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range

Ordnance:

A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2 100 rds per crew

B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19 32 rds per crew

Other Units/Personnel: Evaluator

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

1803-AAOC-1098 Evaluate Individual AAV Gunnery Training
Qualification

Billet: Platoon Commander

Sustainment Interval: 12 Months

Initial Training Setting: Formal School

Condition:

Given evaluation materials, personnel roster, appropriate equipment,
and the AAV Gunnery Table Checklist.

Standard:

In accordance with the AAV Gunnery Training Table Checklists in Annex
A contained within this manual.

Related CTS:

- 18X3-WPNS-3920 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6
- 18X3-WPNS-3921 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7
- 18X3-WPNS-3922 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8
- 18X3-WPNS-3923 - Perform AAV Crew Gunnery Qualification
- 18X3-WPNS-3924 - Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 9
- 18X3-WPNS-3925 - Perform AAV Section Gunnery Qualification

References:

- MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
- TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun,
40MM, MK-19 Mod 3
- TM 09674A-10/3 Operator's Manual for AAVP7A1
- TM 10004A-10/1A Operator's Manual for Upgunned Weapon Station for
the AAVP7A1
- TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

Support Requirements:

Other Units/Personnel: AA Unit conducting AAV Crew or Section
Gunnery Qualification training

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

ANNEX A

AAV GUNNERY TRAINING TABLE CHECKLISTS

Overview. Each gunnery table is an event in the Training and Readiness Manual (T&R) that prescribes some requirements and resources to complete the table. This annex is provided as a reference tool to facilitate gunnery training and evaluation.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

TABLE ONE (Individual Qualification--Dry Fire)

TASK	CONDITIONS TARGETS/SITUATION	AMMO	STANDARD	PASS OR FAIL
1. Complete a written exam.	Without the use of references.	N/A	Must score a minimum of 80%.	P/F
2. Assemble and disassemble the MK 19 and M2.	Under the supervision of an evaluator.	N/A	Perform assembly and disassembly of both weapons.	P/F
3. Set the head space and timing on the M2.	Under the supervision of an evaluator.	N/A	Perform head space and timing in accordance with TM 9-1005-213-10.	P/F
4. Install the MK 19 and M2 in the UGWS.	From a stationary AAV with cleared weapons.	N/A	Perform installation of the weapons in the UGWS in accordance with TM 10004A-10/1B, Chapter 2.	P/F
5. Bore sight the MK 19 and M2 .50 cal.	From a stationary AAV with cleared and installed weapons.	N/A	Perform a minor bore sight within 30 min. Utilizing the parallel method.	P/F
6. Load and clear the MK 19 and M2 .50 cal.	From a stationary AAV with cleared and installed weapons.	10 rd belt of dummy ammo per wpn.	Properly load and clear the MK19 and M2 .50 cal in accordance with TM 10004A-10/1B, Chapter 4.	P/F
7. Clear a malfunction from the MK 19.	From a Stationary AAV with cleared and installed weapons.	10 rd. belt of 40MM dummy ammo.	Properly clear and function check the MK 19 under the supervision of an evaluator.	P/F
8. Perform manipulation exercise.	From a stationary AAV with cleared and installed weapons.	N/A	Lay the .50 cal then the MK 19 on a series of targets of long and close distances.	P/F
9. Perform major bore sighting	From a stationary AAV with cleared and installed weapons.	N/A	In accordance with ITS 1833.8.12	P/F
10. Demonstrate loading and firing procedures of M257	From a stationary AAV with a smoke grenade tester.	N/A	In accordance with TM 10004A-10/1B Chapter 4	P/F

This page left intentionally blank.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

TABLE ONE (Individual Qualification–Dry fire)

TASK	CONDITIONS TARGETS/SITUATION	AMMO	STANDARD	PASS OR FAIL
11. Describe the (3) AAV firing positions.	Must describe the purpose and characteristics of each position.	N/A Dry Fire.	In accordance with TM 10004A-10/1B chapter 4.	P/F
12. Describe fire commands. (ADDRAC)	Must describe the minimum element of a fire command.	N/A Dry Fire.	In accordance with TM 10004A-10/1B chapter 4 and unit SOP.	P/F
13. Prepare an AAV range card.	Must contain the minimum information.	N/A Dry Fire.	In accordance with TM 10004A-10/1B chapter 4 and unit SOP.	P/F
14. Describe the characteristics of fire.	Provide a clear understanding of each characteristics.	N/A Dry Fire.	In accordance with TM 10004A-10/1B chapter 4.	P/F
15. Describe the (3) types or classes of fire.	Provide a clear understanding of each class with respect to the ground, target and gun.	N/A Dry Fire.	In accordance with TM 10004A-10/1B chapter 4.	P/F
16. Demonstrate methods to determine distance to target.	Demonstrate (3) methods for determining distance.	N/A Dry Fire.	With only the use of equipment and maps organic to the AAV unit.	P/F
17. Properly handle/ store ammunition on a AAV.	Demonstrate the proper handling/ storage of ammunition.	Empty ammo cans.	From a Stationary AAV and in accordance with 10002A/-10/1B chapter 5.	P/F
18. Embark troops armed with ammunition.	Describe safety procedures used when embarking troops armed with ammunition.	N/A Dry Fire.	From a stationary AAV and in accordance with unit SOP.	P/F

NOTE:

1. Table 1 is a non-firing event that can be performed in garrison or field.
2. Table 1 will be mastered and evaluated before advancing to table 2.
3. Manipulation exercises are performed by manually laying the weapons on targets requiring changes in elevation and deflection.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

TABLE TWO (Individual Qualification--Zeroing)

TASK	CONDITIONS TARGETS/SITUATION	AMMO	STANDARD	GO/ NO GO
1. Zero the MK 19 and the .50 cal.	Under the supervision of an evaluator engage 1 stationary target at 500 m (known distance) at minimum elevation.	50 rds M2 32 rds 40MM.	In accordance with ITS 1833.8.13/.8.16.	GO/NO GO

NOTE:

1. Gunner must successfully meet all standards set forth in table 1 and 2 prior to advancing.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

TABLE THREE (Individual Qualification–Day Firing)

TASK	CONDITIONS TARGET/SITUATION	AMMO	STANDARD	POINTS
1. Suppress and destroy close in target.	From a stationary firing position. Engage 1 stationary target 600-1000 m using manual or electrical trigger. (Day Fire)	20 rds .50 cal 11 rds 40MM.	Within 30 sec suppress and destroy close in target upon receiving a fire command.	P/F
2. Suppress and destroy multiple close in targets.	From a stationary firing position. Engage 2 stationary targets 600-1000 m using manual or electrical trigger. (Day Fire)	40 rds .50 cal 22 rds 40MM.	Within 60 sec suppress and destroy close in targets upon receiving a fire command.	P/F
3. Suppress and destroy long range target.	From a stationary firing position. Engage 1 stationary target 1000-1800 m using manual or electrical trigger. (Day Fire)	20 rds .50 cal 11 rds 40MM.	Within 45 sec suppress and destroy long range target upon receiving a fire command.	P/F
4. Suppress and destroy multiple long range targets.	From a stationary firing position. Engage 2 stationary targets 1000-1800 m using manual or electrical trigger. (Day Fire)	40 rds .50 cal 22 rds 40MM.	Within 120 sec suppress and destroy long range targets upon receiving a fire command.	P/F
5. Suppress and destroy multiple targets at various ranges.	From a stationary firing position. Engage 2 stationary targets at various ranges using manual or electrical trigger. (Day Fire)	40 rds .50 cal 22 rds 40MM.	Within 120 sec suppress and destroy multiple targets command upon receiving a fire command.	P/F

TOTAL POINTS _____/5

NOTE:

1. Gunners will prepare a range card prior to live fire.
2. Gunners will record firing data for both weapons on targets to be engaged at night.
3. All times are maximum allowed to complete the task.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

TABLE FOUR (Individual Qualification--NBC)

TASK	CONDITIONS TARGETS/SITUATION	AMMO	STANDARD	POINTS
1. Suppress and destroy close in target.	From a stationary AAV, while in MOPP 4, engage 1 stationary target at 600-1000 m. (Day Fire)	20 rds .50 cal 12 rds 40MM.	Within 45 sec suppress and destroy a close in target.	P/F
2. Suppress and destroy long range target.	From a stationary AAV, while in MOPP 4, engage 1 stationary target at 1000-1800 m. (Day Fire)	20 rds .50 cal 12 rds 40MM.	Within 60 sec suppress and destroy a long range target.	P/F

TOTAL POINTS _____ / 2

NOTE:

1. Gunner will be in MOPP 4.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

TABLE FIVE (Individual Qualification--Night Fire)

TASK	CONDITIONS TARGET/SITUATION	AMMO	STANDARD	POINTS
1. Proof range card	From stationary AAV, validate range card data.	20 rds .50 cal	Gunner validates firing data from prepared range card.	P/F
2. Suppress and destroy close in target.	With use of a range card, during darkness, engage one stationary target at 400-800 m with both weapons.	30 rds .50 cal. 12 rds 40 MM	Within 60 sec suppress and destroy close in target on fire command.	P/F
3. Suppress and destroy multiple close in targets.	With use of a range card, during darkness, engage multiple stationary targets at 400-800 m with both weapons.	50 rds .50 cal. 20 rds 40 MM	Within 60 sec suppress and destroy multiple close in targets on fire command.	P/F

TOTAL POINTS _____ / 3

CUMULATIVE POINTS _____ /10

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

AMMUNITION ALLOCATION
(Individual Qualification)

<u>TABLE</u>	<u>EVENT</u>	<u>.50cal/40mm</u>
Table #1	Non / Fire	0/0
Table #2	Live Fire	
	Zeroing (Day)	50/32
Table #3	Live Fire	
	Single target short (Day)	20/11
	Double target short (Day)	40/22
	Single target long (Day)	20/11
	Double target long (Day)	40/22
	ADDRAC (Day)	40/22
Table #4	Live Fire	
	NBC short (Day)	20/12
	NBC long (Day)	20/12
Table #5	Live Fire	
	.50 cal Bore sight check (Night)	20/0
	Night single target	30/12
	Night multiple targets	50/20

TOTAL: 350 RDS .50 CAL, 176 RDS 40MM PER MARINE

INDIVIDUAL SCORING PROCEDURES

1. Table 1 is a pass or fail task list, requiring a written test. The minimum score on the written test is 80 %. Table 1 has no point value. Table 2 is a Go/ No Go event. The gunner must successfully pass all tasks in tables 1 and 2 to proceed any further.

2. Each task in tables 3-5 is a pass or fail event. Each gunner must pass a minimum of seven of the ten events in order to qualify.

3. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with a 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator. (TTECG Standards for CAX)

4. A target is destroyed with the MK 19 when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy a soft target by impacting within 15 meters of the target.

5. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The gunner must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to pass the event.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

Qualifications (Gunner)

ADVANCED GUNNER	80%-100%
MACHINE GUNNER	70%-79%
UNQUALIFIED	0-69%

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

TABLE SIX (Crew--Defensive Fire/Reload)

TASK	CONDITIONS TARGET/SITUATION	AMMO	STANDARD	POINTS
1. Dry Run.	AAV will move from a hide position to a firing position. Engage 1 stationary target 600-1800 m using manual or electrical trigger. (Day Fire)	None	Demonstrate DRY FIRE gun drills simulating taking weapons from condition 4 to condition 1, Demonstrate turret engagements and reload procedures.	N/A
2. Suppress and destroy multiple targets.	AAV will move from a hide position to a firing position. Engage multiple targets 600-1800 m using manual or electrical trigger. (Day Fire)	40 rds .50 cal 24 rds 40MM	Within 60 sec suppress and destroy targets once AAV has set in on the firing line cleared condition 1 and hot.	P/F
3. Suppress and destroy multiple targets	AAV will move from a hide position to a firing position. Engage multiple targets 600-1800 m using manual or electrical trigger. Pull back to a hide position and reload both weapons. Move to alternate firing position and continue engagement. (Day Fire)	<u>Initial Load</u> 40 rds .50 cal 24 rds 40MM <u>Reload</u> 40 rds .50 cal 24 rds 40 MM	Suppress and destroy targets once AAV has set in on the firing line. Pull vehicle off firing line. Reload both weapons. Move to alternate firing point and continue engagement. Within 270 seconds.	P/F

TOTAL POINTS _____/2

NOTE:

1. Range Cards will be made for each primary and alternate firing position. Each firing position will also be staked / marked.
2. Distance from the hide position to the firing position will be determined by the RSO for each range used.
3. During all tasks that require movement of the vehicle, the clock will stop during movement. During reload tasks the clock will run. The evaluator will determine, based on range conditions when the clock should start and when it should stop.
4. AAV crew will expend all ammunition prior to reload.
5. While in the hide position and movement to the firing position, no weapons will be in condition 3 or higher. Only the RSO, will determine the firing position has been safely occupied, and only then will the RSO allow the crew to go condition 1 and hot.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

TABLE SEVEN (Crew--NBC)

TASK	CONDITIONS TARGETS/SITUATION	AMMO	STANDARD	POINTS
1. Dry Run. AAV crew will be in MOPP 4.	AAV will move from a hide position to a firing position. Engage multiple targets 600-1800 m using manual or electrical trigger. Reload .50 cal in position and reengage multiple targets. (Day Fire)	None	Demonstrate DRY FIRE gun drills simulating taking weapons from condition 4 to condition 1, Demonstrate turret engagements and reload procedure	N/A
2. Suppress and destroy multiple targets while in MOPP 4	AAV will move from a hide position to a firing position. Engage multiple targets 600-1800 m using manual or electrical trigger. Reload .50 cal in position and reengage multiple targets. (Day Fire)	<u>Initial</u> <u>Load</u> 25 rds .50 cal 12 rds 40MM <u>Reload</u> 25 rds .50 cal	Within 150 sec suppress and destroy targets once AAV has set in on the firing line. Reload .50 cal and reengage multiple targets.	P/F

TOTAL POINTS _____ / 1

NOTE:

1. All crewmembers will be in MOPP level 4.
2. All vehicle hatches will be buttoned / closed.
3. While in the hide position and movement to the firing position no weapons will be in condition 3 or higher. Only the **RSO** will determine the firing position has been safely occupied and only then will the **RSO** allow the crew to go condition 1 and hot.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

TABLE EIGHT (Crew--Night Fire)

TASK	CONDITIONS TARGETS/SITUATION	AMMO	STANDARD	POINTS
1. Dry Run.	AAV will move from a hide position to a firing position. Engage multiple targets 600-1800 m using manual or electrical trigger. Pull AAV back to a hide position to reload then return to fire position and reengage targets. (Night Fire)	None	Demonstrate DRY FIRE gun drills simulating taking weapons from condition 4 to condition 1, Demonstrate turret engagements and reload procedure.	N/A
2. Suppress and destroy multiple targets.	AAV will move from a hide position to a firing position. Engage multiple targets 600-1800 m using manual or electrical trigger. Pull AAV back to a hide position to reload then return to fire position and reengage targets. (Night Fire)	<u>Initial Load</u> 50 rds .50 cal 24 rds 40MM <u>Reload</u> 50 rds .50 cal 24 rds 40MM	Suppress and destroy multiple targets once AAV has set in on the firing line. Pull AAV to hide position, reload and engage multiple targets. Within 270 seconds.	P/F

TOTAL POINTS _____ / 1

CUMULATIVE POINTS _____ /4

NOTE:

1. Firing position will be marked with staked chem-light.
2. Weapon maintenance and proofing of range card firing data must be performed prior to night fire.
3. While in the hide position and movement to the firing position no weapons will be in condition 3 or higher. Only the **RSO** will determine the firing position has been safely occupied and only then will the **RSO** allow the crew to go condition 1 and hot.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

AMMUNITION ALLOCATION

(Crew Qualification)

<u>TABLE</u>	<u>EVENT</u>	<u>.50cal/40mm</u>
Table #6	Live Fire Multiple Multiple/Reload	40/24 80/48
Table #7	Live Fire NBC/Reload	50/12
Table #8	Live Fire Night Reload	100/48

TOTAL: 270 RDS .50 CAL, 132 RDS 40MM per AAV plus individual qualification ammunition.

CREW SCORING PROCEDURES

1. Table 1 is a pass or fail task list, containing a written test. The minimum score on the written test is 80%. Table 1 has no point value. Table 2 is a Go, No Go event. The crew must successfully pass all tasks in tables 1 and 2 to proceed any further.

2. Each task in tables 6-8 is a pass or fail event. Each crew must pass a minimum of three of the four events in order to qualify.

3. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with a 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator (TTECG Standards for CAX).

4. A target destroyed with the MK 19 is when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy on soft targets by impacting within 15 meters of the target.

5. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The crew must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to pass the event.

Qualifications (Crew)

ADVANCED CREW	100%
QUALIFIED CREW	75%
UNQUALIFIED	0-50%

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

TABLE NINE (Section--Objective Suppression)

TASK	CONDITIONS TARGET/SITUATION	AMMO	STANDARD	POINTS
1. Dry Run.	AAV Section will move on line to a firing position. Suppress stationary targets on objective area 600-1800m using manual or electrical trigger. (Day Fire)	None	Demonstrate proper section communication and control measures, while performing section DRY FIRE drills and reload procedures.	P/F
2. Smoke Screen.	AAV Section will move on line to a firing position. Fire smoke grenades and move back to covered position.	8 smoke grenades per AAV	Within 15 sec stop, employ smoke grenades and move back to covered positions.	P/F
3. Sustained suppression of targets on objective area.	AAV Section will move on line to a firing position. Suppress stationary targets on objective area 600-1800m using manual or electrical trigger. Conduct reload while sustaining suppression of objective. (Day Fire)	<u>Initial Load</u> 50 rds .50 cal 64 rds 40MM per AAV <u>Reload</u> 50 rds .50 cal 32 rds 40MM per AAV	For 10 minutes suppress targets on objective area once AAVs have set in on the firing line. Section Leader will give fire commands and control rate of fire. Section leader will control in place reload of the section.	P/F

NOTE:

1. Loading and firing of the M257 smoke grenade launchers will be in accordance with TM 10004A-10/1B Chapter 4.
2. This simulates support by fire of the infantry in the attack. Weapons should not fire faster than their sustained rates of fire. The purpose of the section table is to evaluate the Section Leader's ability to control his sections fire. It also evaluates the proficiency of the section as a team.
3. The MK-19 will use the low ammo override to stop firing, so only manual traverse will be allowed. Reload for both weapons will be done from inside the vehicle.
4. The Section Leader will control when each vehicle will reload.
5. While moving to the firing position no weapons will be in a condition 3 or higher. Only when determined by the **RSO** that the section can safely engage targets, will the section be cleared to go condition 1 and hot.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

6. Lapse of fire in excess of 20 seconds compromises objective suppression and is considered failure of task.
7. No range cards or preparing of the firing line will be done.
8. Distance between AAVs will be determined by range conditions and regulations.
9. The evaluator will assign targets to the Section Leader once the AAVs are on the firing line. The clock will not start until the Section Leader has a clear understanding of the engagement area, this applies to all timed events.

QUALIFICATION

1. Section will be qualified when all tasks in all tables have been passed.
2. Passing of each task of each table will be based on the decision of an objective evaluator, i.e. Company Gunnery Sergeant.
3. Suppression standards are based on TTECG Standards for CAX.

AMMUNITION ALLOCATION
(Section Qualification)

<u>TABLE</u>	<u>EVENT</u>	<u>.50cal/40mm</u>
Table #9	Live Fire	
	Smoke Screen (Day)	8 Smk Grds/crew
	Objective Suppression/Reload (Day)	100/96 per/crew

TOTAL: 400 RDS .50 CAL, 384 RDS 40MM, 32 Smoke Grenades per section plus ammunition allocation for individual and crew qualification.

This page left intentionally blank.

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

ANNEX B

ORDNANCE REQUIREMENTS

This annex provides quick ordnance training references to request ammunition, plan and manage training, and budget for future ammunition for training officers/SNCOs, occupational field sponsors, commanders, and logistics/ammunition staff sections.

INDIVIDUAL TRAINING ORDNANCE MATRIX

<u>EVENT</u>	<u>EVENT TITLE</u>	<u>DODIC</u>	<u># rds</u>	<u>UNIT</u>
18X3-CORE-1093	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 1	A560 CTG, CAL .50, Dummy	10	per wpn
		B472 CTG, 40MM, Linked, Dummy F/MK- 19	10	per wpn
18X3-CORE-1094	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 2	A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	50	per Marine
		B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	32	per Marine
18X3-MOJT-2095	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 3	A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	160	per Marine
		B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	88	per Marine
18X3-MOJT-2096	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 4	A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	40	per Marine
		B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	24	per Marine
18X3-MOJT-2097	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 5	A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	100	per Marine
		B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	32	per Marine

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

COLLECTIVE TRAINING ORDNANCE MATRIX

EVENT	EVENT TITLE	DODIC	#	UNIT
18X3-AMPH-4135	Prepare AA Element for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping	L312 SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE	1	per crew
		L311 SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE	1	per crew
18X3-AMPH-3142	Conduct Emergency Procedures Afloat	L311 SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE	1	per crew
		L312 SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE	1	per crew
18X3-MCM-3828	Employ MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System	ML26 CHARGE, DEMOLITION LINEAR INERT M69	1	per crew
		J143 ROCKET MOTOR, 5-inch MK22 Mod 4	3	per crew
18X3-MCM-3828	Conduct Hasty Demolition to Prevent Enemy Use	G900 GRENADE, HAND, INCENDIARY, M14	3	per crew
18X3-WPNS-3920	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 6	A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	120	per crew
		B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	96	per crew
18X3-WPNS-3921	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 7	A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	50	per crew
		B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	12	per crew
18X3-WPNS-3922	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 8	A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	100	per crew
		B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	48	per crew
18X3-WPNS-4924	Perform AAV Gunnery Training Table 9	A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	100	per crew
		G826 GRENADE, LAUNCHER, SMOKE INFARED SCREEING M76	32	per crew
18X3-WPNS-5980	Conduct Platoon Live Fire and Maneuver Assault	A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	400	per crew

AA UNIT T&R MANUAL

SUMMARY OF AMMUNITION TRAINING REQUIREMENTS (ANNUAL)

INDIVIDUAL (1803, 1833)

A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	350 rds
B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	132 rds

AAVP7A1/RAM RS Crew

A560 CTG, CAL .50, DUMMY	10 rds
B472 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, DUMMY F/MK19	10 rds
A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	670 rds
B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	132 rds
G826 GRENADE, LAUNCHER, SMOKE INFARED SCREEING M76	8 rds
G881 GRENADE, HAND, INCENDIARY, M67	3 each
L311 SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE	2 each
L312 SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE	2 each

AAVC7A1 Crew

A131 CTG, 7.62MM, Linked 4&1	100 rds
G881 GRENADE, HAND, INCENDIARY, M67	3 each
L311 SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE	2 each
L312 SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE	2 each

MK154 KIT Crew

In addition to normal AAVP7A1/RAM RS Crew requirements:

J143 ROCKET MOTOR, 5-inch MK22 Mod 4	3 each
ML26 CHARGE, DEMOLITION LINEAR INERT M69	1 each

AAV SECTION (4 AAVS)

A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	2680 rds
B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	528 rds
G826 GRENADE, LAUNCHER, SMOKE INFARED SCREEING M76	32 rds
G881 GRENADE, HAND, INCENDIARY, M67	12 each
L311 SIGNAL, RED STAR PARACHUTE	28 each
L312 SIGNAL, WHITE STAR PARACHUTE	28 each

AA PLATOON (3 SECTIONS)

A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	10720 rds
B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	1584 rds

AA BATTALION (230 AAV Crews)

A576 CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	131,100 rds
B542 CTG, 40MM, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	30,360 rds

This page left intentionally blank.